

---

---

**Infantry Rifle and Mechanized  
Platoon Collective Task  
Publication**

---

---

**August 2013**

---

---

**Headquarters, Department of the Army**

---

---

**DISTRIBUTION RESTRICTION: Approved for public release;  
distribution is unlimited.**

This publication is available at Army Knowledge Online  
(<https://armypubs.us.army.mil/doctrine/index.html>).  
To receive publishing updates, please subscribe at  
[http://www.apd.army.mil/AdminPubs/new\\_subscribe.asp](http://www.apd.army.mil/AdminPubs/new_subscribe.asp).

**Infantry Rifle and Mechanized Platoon  
Collective Task Publication  
Contents**

	<b>Page</b>
	<b>Preface ..... v</b>
<b>Chapter 1</b>	<b>INTRODUCTION ..... 1-1</b>
	<b>Section I –Text References ..... 1-1</b>
	<b>Section II – Army Approach to Training ..... 1-1</b>
	Army Training Strategy ..... 1-2
	Army Leadership Development Strategy ..... 1-2
	Army Training System ..... 1-3
	Unit Training Management ..... 1-7
	Army Force Generation ..... 1-8
	<b>Section III - Other Training Considerations..... 1-9</b>
	Operational Environment..... 1-10
	Decisive Action ..... 1-13
	Planning Training ..... 1-17
	Training Products ..... 1-17
	Live, Virtual, Constructive, and Gaming Training ..... 1-22
<b>Chapter 2</b>	<b>Crosswalk and Outlines..... 2-1</b>
	<b>Supporting Collective Task to Company METL</b>
	<b>Crosswalk ..... 2-1</b>
	<b>Training and Evaluation Outlines ..... 2-4</b>
	Introduction..... 2-4
	Structure..... 2-5
	Format..... 2-5
	Use..... 2-6

---

**DISTRIBUTION RESTRICTION:** Approved for public release; distribution is unlimited.

Conduct a Movement to Contact (Platoon-Company) (07-2-1090)..... 2-7

Conduct an Attack by Fire (Platoon-Company) (07-2-1256) ..... 2-12

Conduct a Raid (Platoon – Company) (07-2-9008) .... 2-25

Enter and Clear a Building (Section-Platoon) (07-3-9018) ..... 2-31

Conduct Support by Fire (Platoon-Company) (07-2-3000) ..... 2-39

Conduct an Air Assault (Platoon-Company) (07-2-1495) ..... 2-45

Conduct a Bypass (Platoon-Company) (07-2-9002)... 2-50

Breach an Obstacle (Platoon-Company) (17-2-3070) 2-55

Conduct a Delay (Platoon-Company) (07-2-9004) .... 2-69

Conduct a Withdrawal (Platoon-Company) (07-2-9009) ..... 2-74

Conduct a Relief in Place (Platoon-Company) (07-2-9012) ..... 2-79

Conduct a Screen (Platoon-Company) (17-2-9225) ... 2-84

Conduct Route Reconnaissance (Platoon-Company) (17-2-4000)..... 2-93

Conduct a Movement to Contact (Platoon-Company) (17-2-4010)..... 2-99

Conduct Area Reconnaissance (Platoon-Company) (17-2-4011)..... 2-109

Conduct Area Security (Platoon-Company) (07-2-1324.P)..... 2-118

Secure Routes (Platoon-Company) (07-2-1450) ..... 2-125

Conduct Roadblock and Checkpoint Operations (Platoon-Company) (19-3-2406)..... 2-131

Conduct Convoy Security (19-3-2007) ..... 2-141

Secure Civilians During Operations (Platoon-Company) (07-2-4054) ..... 2-147

Integrate Indirect Fire Support (Platoon-Company) (07-2-3036)..... 2-151

Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Platoon-Company) (07-2-5027) ..... 2-158

Conduct a Passage of Lines as the Passing Unit (Platoon-Company) (07-2-9006)..... 2-161

Conduct a Passage of Lines as the Stationary Unit (Platoon-Company) (07-2-9007) ..... 2-167

Conduct Logistics Package (LOGPAC) Support (63-2-4546) ..... 2-172

	Conduct Operational Decontamination (03-2-9224) .	2-178
	Treat Casualties (08-2-0003).....	2-184
	Evacuate Casualties (08-2-0004).....	2-188
<b>Chapter 3</b>	<b>Supporting Battle/Crew Drills.....</b>	<b>3-1</b>
	Battle/Crew Drills.....	3-1
	React to Contact (Visual, IED, Direct Fire [includes RPG]) (07-3-D9501) .....	3-6
	Break Contact (07-3-D9505) .....	3-12
	React to an Obstacle (17-3-D8008).....	3-17
	React to an IED Attack While Maintaining Movement (05-3-D0017).....	3-20
	Establish a Hasty Checkpoint (19-4-D0105).....	3-22
	Conduct the 5 Cs (05-3-D0016) .....	3-26
	React to Indirect Fire (07-3-D9504).....	3-28
	Knock Out Bunker (07-3-D9406) .....	3-30
	Evacuate a Casualty (Dismounted and Mounted) (07-3-D9507).....	3-33
	Enter a Trench to Secure a Foothold (07-3-D9410) ...	3-36
	Breach of a Mined Wire Obstacle (07-3-D9412).....	3-41
	React to Air Attack Drill (17-3-D8004) .....	3-46
	React to Ambush (Far) (07-3-D9503).....	3-49
	React to Nuclear Attack (07-3-D9483) .....	3-53
	React to a Chemical Attack (03-3-D0035).....	3-55
	React to Ambush (Near) (07-3-D9502) .....	3-57
	Enter and Clear a Room (07-4-D9509) .....	3-62
<b>Appendix A</b>	<b>Infantry Platoon Unit Task List.....</b>	<b>A-1</b>
<b>Appendix B.</b>	<b>Infantry Company Higher Headquarters' METL.....</b>	<b>B-1</b>
<b>Appendix C.</b>	<b>CATS Task Selection to METL Matrix.....</b>	<b>C-1</b>
<b>GLOSSARY</b>	.....	<b>Glossary-1</b>
<b>REFERENCES.....</b>	.....	<b>References-1</b>
<b>INDEX</b>	.....	<b>Index-1</b>

## Figures

Figure 1-1. Collective and individual tasks supporting higher unit METL .....	1-15
Figure 1. React to contact, direct fire (dismounted) .....	3-8
Figure 2. React to contact, direct fire (dismounted) .....	3-9

Figure 3. React to contact, direct fire (dismounted)..... 3-10

Figure 1. Break contact (dismounted) ..... 3-13

Figure 2. Break contact (dismounted) (continued) ..... 3-14

Figure 3. Break contact (dismounted) (continued) ..... 3-15

Figure 1. Enter a trench to secure a foothold ..... 3-37

Figure 2. Enter a trench to secure a foothold  
(continued)..... 3-38

Figure 3. Enter a trench to secure a foothold  
(continued)..... 3-39

Figure 1. Breach obstacle ..... 3-43

Figure 1. React to ambush (far) (dismounted) ..... 3-49

Figure 2. React to ambush (far) (dismounted)  
(continued)..... 3-50

Figure 3. React to ambush (far) (dismounted)  
(continued)..... 3-51

Figure 1. React to ambush (near) (dismounted) ..... 3-58

Figure 2. React to ambush (near) (dismounted)  
(continued)..... 3-59

Figure 3. React to ambush (near) (dismounted)  
(continued)..... 3-60

Figure 1. Clear a room, first two Soldiers enter ..... 3-63

Figure 2. Clear a room, third Soldier enters ..... 3-63

Figure 3. Clear a room, fourth Soldier enters ..... 3-64

## **Tables**

Table 1-1. Chapter 1 text references..... 1-1

Table 2-2. Example Infantry platoon supporting  
collective tasks to company METL  
crosswalk..... 2-2

Table 3-1. Collective task to drill table..... 3-1

Table A-1. Infantry platoon unit task list ..... A-1

Table C-1. Example Infantry platoon CATS task  
selection to company METL matrix..... C-2

## **Preface**

### **Purpose**

The training circular (TC) is a tool that platoon leaders can use as an aid during training strategy development. The products in this TC are developed to support the plan.

### **Scope**

This TC provides guidance for platoon leaders, leaders, and Soldiers who are responsible for planning, preparing, executing, and assessing training of the Infantry platoon.

### **Applicability**

This publication applies to the Active Army, the U.S. Army National Guard (ARNG)/Army National Guard of the United States (ARNGUS), and the United States Army Reserve (USAR) unless otherwise stated.

### **Intended Audience**

The primary target audience for this TC is the platoon leader, and other leaders within an Infantry platoon. The secondary audience comprises training developers involved in developing training support materials for Professional Military Education (PME).

### **Feedback**

The proponent for this publication is the U.S. Army Training and Doctrine Command. The preparing agency is the U.S. Army Maneuver Center of Excellence. You may send comments and recommendations by any means, US mail, e-mail, fax, or telephone, following the format of DA Form 2028, *Recommended Changes to Publications and Blank Forms*. More information is available by phone. Point of contact information is as follows.

E-mail: [BENN.MCoE.DOCTRINE@CONUS.ARMY.MIL](mailto:BENN.MCoE.DOCTRINE@CONUS.ARMY.MIL)  
Phone: COM 706-545-7114 or DSN 835-7114  
Fax: COM 706-545-8511 or DSN 835-8511  
U.S. Mail: Commanding General, MCoE  
Directorate of Training and Doctrine (DOTD)  
Doctrine and Collective Training Division  
ATTN: ATZB-TDD  
Fort Benning, GA 31905-5410

Unless otherwise stated in this publication, masculine nouns and pronouns refer to both men and women.

**This page intentionally left blank.**

## Chapter 1

# Introduction

The mission of the Infantry is to close with the enemy by means of fire and maneuver in order to destroy or capture him, or to repel his assault with fire, close combat, and counterattack. The Infantry will engage the enemy with combined arms in all operational environments to bring about his defeat. The close combat fight is not unique to the Infantry.

### SECTION I – TEXT REFERENCES

1-1. Table 1-1 contains the references used in this chapter.

**Table 1-1. Chapter 1 text references**

<b>Reference</b>	<b>Subject</b>
ATS	Deputy Chief of Staff, G-3/5/7 memorandum, <i>Army Training Strategy</i>
LDS	<i>The Army Leader Development Strategy for a 21st Century Army</i>
FM 3-90.1	<i>Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team</i>
ATLDG	Army, G-3/5/7 memorandum, <i>Army Training and Leader Development Guidance</i>
ADP 3-0	<i>Unified Land Operations</i>
FM 3-20.15	<i>Tank Platoon</i>
ADP 7-0	<i>Training Units and Developing Leaders</i>
FM 6-22	<i>Army Leadership: Competent, Confident, and Agile</i>
ATN	<i>Army Training Network</i>
FM 1-02	<i>Operational Terms and Graphics</i>
ADP 6-0	<i>Mission Command</i>
AR 350-1	<i>Army Training and Leader Development</i>

### SECTION II – ARMY APPROACH TO TRAINING

1-2. Before platoon leaders begin planning, preparing, executing and assessing training, they first must have a clear understanding of the Army's training and leader development strategies, training system, and training management.

## ARMY TRAINING STRATEGY

1-3. The Army goal is to routinely generate trained and ready units for both current missions and future contingencies at an operational tempo that is sustainable (*Army Training and Leader Development Guidance [TLDG]*, FY 10-11). To accomplish this goal, the Army G-3/5/7 has developed the comprehensive Army training strategy (ATS).

1-4. The ATS describes the ends, ways, and means required to adapt Army training programs to an era of persistent conflict, to prepare units and leaders to conduct decisive action operations, and to rebuild strategic depth. The ATS generates cohesive, trained, and ready forces that can dominate at any point in the spectrum of conflict, in any environment, and under all conditions.

1-5. The ATS has identified 10 goals. Each goal has supporting objectives that details the ATS. Obtaining each goal ensures the Army generates trained and ready units. The goals are—

- Train units for decisive action operations.
- Enable adaption of training.
- Train and sustain Soldier skills.
- Train and sustain Army civilian skills.
- Sustain and improve effectiveness of combat training centers (CTCs).
- Provide training at home station and while deployed.
- Provide training support system live, virtual, constructive, and gaming (LVCG) enablers.
- Increase culture and foreign language competencies.
- Provide supporting and integrating capabilities.
- Resource the Army training strategy.

## ARMY LEADERSHIP DEVELOPMENT STRATEGY

1-6. While the ATS was being developed, the commanding general (CG) of the Training and Doctrine Command (TRADOC) concurrently developed a leader development strategy (LDS). *The Army Leader Development Strategy for a 21st Century Army* discusses how the Army will adapt the way in which it develops leaders. This strategy presents the challenges of the operational environment (OE), the implications of the OE on leader development, and the mission, framework, characteristics, and imperatives of, and how to implement the strategy. The LDS describes eight specific imperatives designed to guide the policy and actions necessary to produce the future leaders the Army will need.

1-7. The LDS is part of a campaign of learning. It seeks to be as adaptive and innovative as the leaders it must develop. The LDS is grounded in Army leadership doctrine and seeks to deliver the leader qualities described in both Army doctrine and capstone concepts. (Refer to FM 6-22 and *The Army Leader Development Strategy for a 21st Century Army*.) The following documents describe leadership qualities:

- **ADP 3-0.** This manual discusses decisive action, which includes the elements of offensive, defensive, and stability (or defense support of civil authorities. Army forces conduct decisive and sustainable land operations through the simultaneous combination of offensive, defensive, and stability operations (or defense support of civil authorities) appropriate to the mission and environment. Army forces conduct regular and irregular warfare against both conventional and hybrid threats.

## ARMY TRAINING SYSTEM

1-8. The Army Training System prepares Soldiers, organizations, and their leaders to conduct decisive action operations. The training system is built upon a foundation of disciplined, educated, and professional Soldiers and leaders, adhering to principles that provide guidance.

### Principles of Unit Training

1-9. Army training exists today in many domains and throughout the OE in which Soldiers and leaders find themselves. To maintain a professional baseline the Army has developed eleven training principles that govern Army training. (Refer to ADP 7-0.) The principles provide a broad but basic foundation to guide how commanders and other leaders plan, prepare, execute, and assess effective training. The 11 principles of training are:

- **Commanders and other leaders are responsible for training.** Commanders are ultimately responsible for the training, performance, and readiness of their Soldiers. However, leaders across all echelons and throughout the operational Army and generating force are responsible for training their respective organizations.
- **Noncommissioned officers train individuals, crews, and small teams.** Noncommissioned officers (NCOs) are the primary trainers of enlisted Soldiers, crews, and small teams. Officers and NCOs have a special training relationship; their training responsibilities complement each other. This relationship spans all echelons and types of organizations. Noncommissioned officers are usually an organization's most experienced trainers.
- **Train to standard.** Army training is performed to standard. Leaders prescribe tasks with their associated standards that ensure

their organization is capable of accomplishing its doctrinal or assigned mission. A standard is the minimum proficiency required to accomplish a task under a set of conditions.

- **Train as you will fight.** “Fight” includes lethal and nonlethal skills in decisive action operations. “Train as you will fight” means training under the conditions of expected, anticipated, or plausible OEs.
- **Train while operating.** Training continues when a unit is engaged in operations. Combat builds experience, but not necessarily effectiveness. To adapt to constantly changing situations, units continue to train even in the midst of campaigns. Platoon leaders use available time to rehearse mission execution and prepare for likely contingencies. They conduct after-action reviews (AARs) after completing operations—and after completing intermediate tasks—to capture lessons learned for future operations.
- **Train fundamentals first.** Platoons train their most important collective tasks first; the tasks that are basic to mission proficiency.
- **Train to develop operational adaptability.** Although planning is critical to successful training, circumstances may cause plans to change. Leaders prepare for personnel turbulence and equipment shortages even though the Army Force Generation (ARFORGEN) system tries to ensure personnel and equipment objectives are met before training begins. Platoon leaders develop training, manning, and equipping contingency plans. They train their Soldiers to assume other positions on short notice.
- **Understand the operational environment.** Commanders understand the OE and how it affects training. They replicate operational conditions, including anticipated variability, in training. Platoon leaders understand and use the operational variables of political, military, economic, social, information, infrastructure, physical environment, and time (PMESII–PT) and the mission variables of mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT–TC) to assist the commander in analyzing the OE and mission as they plan, prepare, execute, and assess training.
- **Train to sustain.** Platoons must be capable of operating continuously while deployed. Essential for continuous operations, sustainment is an integral part of training.

- **Train to maintain.** Platoon leaders allocate time for Soldiers to maintain themselves and their equipment to standard during training events. This time includes scheduled and routine equipment maintenance periods and assembly area operations. Leaders train their subordinates to appreciate the importance of maintaining their equipment. Organizations tend to perform maintenance during operations to the standards they practice in training.
- **Conduct multiechelon and concurrent training.** Multiechelon training is a technique that allows for the simultaneous training of more than one echelon on different or complementary tasks. It is the most efficient way to train, especially with limited resources. It requires synchronized planning and coordination by commanders and other leaders at each affected echelon.

### Principles of Leader Development

1-10. Leader development is deliberate, continuous, and progressive, spanning a leader's entire career. Leader development comprises training and education gained in schools; the learning and experiences gained while assigned to organizations; and the individual's own self-development.

1-11. Platoon leaders are responsible for the professional development of subordinate leaders, and for building and sustaining the leader characteristics and skills. (Refer to FM 6-22.) Platoon leaders are responsible for leader development of subordinates and are every leader's top priority. Effective training and education build good leaders, and good leaders develop and execute effective training and education in schools and units. The experience gained during assignments puts the training and education into practice and provides the skills and knowledge leaders need to be versatile, adaptable, well-rounded, competent professionals. The Army's principles of leader development are:

- **Lead by example.** Platoon leaders are role models. To demonstrate good leadership is to teach good leadership. Everything a leader does and says is scrutinized, analyzed, and often imitated. The example set by platoon leaders influences the thoughts and attitudes of their subordinates, their families, and their peers. A good example positively influences the development of subordinates.
- **Take responsibility for developing subordinate leaders.** Platoon leaders take responsibility for developing their subordinate leaders. They directly observe, assess and provide honest informal and formal feedback to their subordinates. They discuss ways to sustain and improve leader skills, knowledge,

abilities, and behaviors with their subordinate leaders as often as needed. They ensure subordinates undergo experiences that enhance their skills, knowledge, abilities, and behaviors; prepare them for success; improve their adaptability; and prepare them for future responsibilities. They ensure their subordinates attend professional military education at the right time in their careers and functional training to make them effective leaders in their units of assignment.

- **Create a learning environment for subordinate leaders.** Leaders learn in an environment conducive to growth. Growth occurs best in environments that provide subordinates with opportunities to overcome obstacles and make difficult decisions. Platoon leaders encourage their subordinates to seek challenging assignments, and platoon leaders underwrite subordinates' honest mistakes. Learning comes from both successes and failures. Leaders must feel comfortable taking risks and trying new approaches to training. An environment that allows subordinate leaders to make honest—as opposed to repeated or careless—mistakes without prejudice is essential to leader development.
- **Train leaders in the art and science of mission command.** Platoon leaders approach mission command training from two perspectives. First, they train themselves and their subordinates on how to conduct operations using mission command. (Refer to ADP 3-0 and in ADP 6-0.) Second, they follow the principles of mission command in training management. Specifically, they tell their subordinates the purpose for training and the end state they expect from it, but they leave the determination of how to achieve the end state to the subordinate. As appropriate, they provide guidance requested by the subordinate leader. Employing mission command in training follows the principle of train as you will fight. Using mission command principles improves not only mission command skills, but it also encourages risk-taking, initiative, and creativity.
- **Train to develop adaptive leaders.** The Army continues to succeed under the most challenging conditions because Soldiers adapt to unexpected situations. Operational adaptability begins in the schools and is then put into practice during tough, realistic training situations, well before leaders are engaged in decisive action. Knowing that change will occur, effective platoon leaders plan for it and develop potential contingency plans to mitigate the effects of change. Effective platoon leaders also look for indicators that change is about to occur so they can ease the

transition effects. Placing subordinate leaders into changing, unfamiliar, and uncomfortable situations in training helps foster operational adaptability. The lessons they learn help develop intuition, confidence, and the ability to think on their feet. The Army trains leaders for their next position before they assume it. Cross-training provides unit depth and flexibility and builds leader confidence.

- **Train leaders to think critically and creatively.** The Army develops leaders able to solve difficult, complex problems. Leaders should be able to recognize the issue, quickly ask the right questions, consider a variety of alternative solutions, and develop effective solutions. They should be comfortable making decisions with minimal information. Army leaders employ the design methodology. (Refer to ADP 5-0.)
- **Train your leaders to know their subordinates and their families.** Every platoon leader should know his subordinates strengths, weakness, and capabilities. An effective leader maximizes a subordinate's strengths and helps him overcome weaknesses. Similarly, an effective leader provides advice, counsel, and support as subordinate leaders develop their own subordinates. Family well-being is essential to unit and individual readiness. The Army trains leaders to know and help not only the subordinates, but also their families. Training ensures subordinate leaders recognize the importance of families and are adept at helping individuals solve family issues and sustain sound relationships.

## UNIT TRAINING MANAGEMENT

1-12. Unit training management (UTM) is the process used by Army leaders to identify training requirements and subsequently plan, prepare, execute, and assess training. UTM provides a systematic way of managing time and resources and of meeting training objectives through purposeful training activities.

1-13. The platoon leader's role in training, when using the mission as the foundation, is assisting the company commander in determining the tasks that the platoon will train. Platoon leaders must understand the unit's mission and the expected operational conditions to replicate in training. The commander identifies collective tasks to train and the associated risks of not training other collective tasks to proficiency, and relays that knowledge to the platoon leaders.

1-14. The conditions are either the ones described in the higher unit's training and leader development guidance, or those likely to be encountered in a mission. The platoon leader visualizes the platoon's required state of readiness for the mission and the training necessary to achieve mission proficiency, given the platoon leader's assessment of current task proficiency. The platoon leader describes the training plan in training and leader development guidance or operation orders and directs its execution to subordinate leaders. By participating in, and overseeing training and listening to feedback from subordinates, platoon leaders assess the platoon's task proficiency and whether the training being conducted contributes to mission readiness.

1-15. UTM is the practical application of the training doctrine found in ADP 7-0. The UTM information contained in ADP 7-0 supersedes FM 7-1. UTM provides a systematic way of managing time and resources and of meeting training objectives through purposeful training activities.

1-16. ADP 7-0 and UTM are posted within the Army Training Network (ATN). The ATN is an Internet Web site that provides best practices, examples, tools and lessons learned.

1-17. These references are linked and designed to be used in concert as a digital resource. ADP 7-0 provides the intellectual framework of what Army training is, while UTM provides the practical how-to of planning, preparing, executing, and assessing training in detail. The ATN, as the digital portal to both documents, additionally provides a wealth of other training resources to include the latest training news, information, products and links to other Army training resources.

## **ARMY FORCE GENERATION**

1-18. Army force generation (ARFORGEN) is a process that progressively builds unit readiness over time during predictable periods of availability to provide trained, ready, and cohesive units prepared for operational deployments. (Refer to ADP 7-0.)

1-19. Army force generation drives UTM within the Army. (Refer to ADP 7-0 for more information.) UTM is the process used by Army leaders to identify training requirements and subsequently plan, prepare, execute, and assess training.

1-20. The Army prepares and provides campaign capable, expeditionary forces through ARFORGEN, which applies to Regular Army (RA) and Reserve Component (RC) units (Army National Guard and U.S. Army Reserve).

1-21. Army force generation takes each unit through a three-phased readiness cycle (known as pools): reset, train/ready, and available. The reset, train/ready, and available force pools provide the framework for the structured progression of increased readiness in ARFORGEN. (Refer to AR 350-1.) The force pools are defined as follows:

- **Reset force pool.** Units enter the reset force pool when they redeploy from long-term operations or complete their window for availability in the available force pool. The RA units remain in the reset force pool for at least six months and RC units remain in the reset force pool for at least 12 months. Units in the reset force pool have no readiness expectations.
- **Train/ready force pool.** A unit enters the train/ready force pool following the reset force pool. The train/ready force pool is not of fixed duration. Units in the train/ready force pool will increase training readiness and capabilities as quickly as possible, given the resource availability. Units may receive a mission to deploy during the train/ready force pool.
- **Available force pool.** Units focus on deployment and training to sustain METL fundamentals and correct any operational deficiencies. Units in the available force pool are at the highest state of training and readiness capability and are ready to deploy when directed. The available force pool window for availability is one year.

1-22. Units move from the available force pool to the reset force pool following a deployment or the end of their designated window of availability.

## SECTION III - OTHER TRAINING CONSIDERATIONS

1-23. When implementing the platoon training plan, the platoon leader can use this TC for several specific purposes:

- Apply tasks, conditions, and standards of performance to the unit's training objectives.
- Evaluate the platoon's ability to perform specific tasks.
- Examine the effectiveness of the training in preparing the platoon for future training and operations.
- Provide input for planning and resourcing training activities at the company or platoon level.

1-24. The specific details of each platoon's training plan varies depending on a variety of factors, including the following:

- The parent unit's METL.

- Training directives and guidance established by the chain of command.
- The platoon's training priorities.
- Available training resources, including training areas.

### **OPERATIONAL ENVIRONMENT**

1-25. The operational environment is a composite of the conditions, circumstances, and influences that affect the employment of capabilities and bear on the decisions of the commander (JP 1-02). Army leaders plan, prepare, execute, and assess operations by analyzing the operational environment in terms of the operational variables and mission variables. The operational variables consist of political, military, economic, social, information, infrastructure, physical environment, time (known as PMESII-PT). The mission variables consist of mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, civil considerations (known as METT-TC). How these variables interact in a specific situation, domain (land, maritime, air, space, or cyberspace), area of operations, or area of interest describes a commander's operational environment but does not limit it. No two operational environments are identical, even within the same theater of operations, and every operational environment changes over time. Because of this, Army leaders consider how evolving relevant operational or mission variables affect force employment concepts and tactical actions that contribute to the strategic purpose.

### **OPERATIONAL VARIABLES**

1-26. Leaders analyze and describe the OE in terms of operational variables. Operational variables are those broad aspects of the environment, both military and nonmilitary, that may differ from one operational area to another and affect campaigns and major operations.

1-27. These operational variables are easily remembered using PMESII-PT.

### **MISSION VARIABLES**

1-28. Army forces use mission variables to focus analysis on specific elements of the environment that apply to their mission. Upon receipt of a warning order or mission, Army tactical leaders narrow their focus to six mission variables. Mission variables are those aspects of the OE that directly affect a mission. They outline the situation as it applies to a specific Army unit. Mission variables are mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC). (Refer to ADP 3-0.) The platoon leader carefully analyzes the

platoon OPORD to identify the platoon's purpose; the specified, implied, and essential tasks it must perform, and the time line for accomplishing those tasks. The following outline of METT-TC factors assists the platoon leader in analyzing the mission and creating a time line.

1-29. METT-TC is a memory aid that identifies the mission variables:

- **Mission.** The mission is the task, together with the purpose, that clearly indicates the action to be taken and the reason therefore. (Refer to JP 1-02.) Leaders analyze a mission in terms of specified tasks, implied tasks, and the commander's intent two echelons up.
- **Enemy.** This analysis includes not only the known enemy but also other threats to mission success. These include threats posed by multiple adversaries with a wide array of political, economic, religious, and personal motivations.
- **Terrain and weather.** Terrain and weather are natural conditions that profoundly influence operations. Terrain and weather are neutral; they favor neither side unless one is more familiar with—or better prepared to operate in—the physical environment. The platoon leader analyzes the terrain using the factors of terrain: observation, avenues of approach (AAs), key and decisive terrain, obstacles, and cover and concealment (OAKOC). Elements of the OAKOC and weather analysis include the following:
  - Observation and fields of fire.
  - Avenues of approach.
  - Key terrain.
  - Obstacles.
  - Cover and concealment.
  - Weather: Climate and weather can significantly impact military operations. For military applications, the term “weather” implies weather forecast information designed to support a planned future operation. (Refer to FM 2-01.3.) The following are military aspects of weather:
    - Visibility.
    - Wind.
    - Precipitation.
    - Cloud cover/ceiling.
    - Temperature.
    - Humidity.
    - Atmospheric pressure (as required).

- **Troops and support available.** Troops and support available are the number, type, capabilities, and condition of available friendly troops and support. These include resources from joint, interagency, multinational, host-nation, commercial (via contracting), and private organizations. They also include support provided by civilians.
- **Time available.** Time is critical to all operations. Controlling and exploiting it is central to initiative, tempo, and momentum. By exploiting time, leaders can exert constant pressure, control the relative speed of decisions and actions, and exhaust enemy forces. As part of this analysis, the platoon leader conducts reverse planning to ensure that all essential, specified, and implied tasks can be accomplished in the time available. He develops a reverse planning schedule (time line) beginning with actions on the objective and working backward through each step of the operation and preparation to the present time. This process also helps the platoon in making efficient use of planning and preparation time.
- **Civilian considerations.** Civil considerations are the influence of manmade infrastructure, civilian institutions, and attitudes and activities of the civilian leaders, populations, and organizations within an area if operations (AO) on the conduct of military operations. (Refer to ADP 6-0). Most of the time, units are surrounded by noncombatants. These noncombatants include residents of the AO, local officials, and governmental and nongovernmental organizations. Based on information from higher headquarters (HQ) and their own knowledge and judgment, platoon leaders identify civil considerations that affect their mission.

### THREATS

1-30. Threats facing U.S. forces today vary. They are not always enemy forces dressed in uniforms that are easily identified as foe, aligned on a battlefield and opposite U.S. forces. Threats are nation-states, organizations, people, groups, or conditions that can damage or destroy life, vital resources, or institutions.

1-31. Threats are described in four major categories or challenges: traditional, irregular, catastrophic, and disruptive. While helpful in describing the threats the Army is likely to face, these categories do not define the nature of the adversary. Adversaries may use any and all of these challenges in combination to achieve the desired effect against the United States. The four threats are defined as follows:

- **Traditional Threats.** These are states of recognized military capabilities and forces in understood forms of military competition and conflict.
- **Irregular Threats.** These are opponents employing unconventional, asymmetric methods and means to counter traditional U.S. advantages.
- **Catastrophic Threats.** This is an enemy acquiring, possessing, and using weapons of mass destruction and effects.
- **Disruptive Threats.** This is an enemy using new technologies that reduce U.S. advantages in key operational domains.

### Hybrid Threats

1-32. The term “hybrid threat” has recently been used to capture the seemingly increased complexity of operations and the multiplicity of actors involved. While the existence of innovative enemies is not new, today’s hybrid threats demand that the platoon prepare for a range of possible threats simultaneously.

1-33. Hybrid threats are characterized by the combination of regular forces governed by international law, military tradition, and custom with irregular forces that are unregulated and as a result act with no restrictions on violence or targets for violence. This could include militias, terrorists, guerillas, and criminals. Such forces combine their abilities to use and transition between regular and irregular tactics and weapons. These tactics and weapons enable hybrid threats to capitalize on perceived vulnerabilities making them particularly effective.

### DECISIVE ACTION

1-34. An Infantry platoon operates in a framework of decisive action. ADP 3-0 provides a discussion of decisive action which includes the elements of offensive, defensive, and stability operations (or defense support of civil authorities).

1-35. Army forces conduct decisive and sustainable land operations through the simultaneous combination of offensive, defensive, and stability operations (or defense support of civil authorities) appropriate to the mission and environment. Army forces conduct regular and irregular warfare against both conventional and hybrid threats. The primary operations are:

- **Offensive.** Offensive operations are operations conducted to defeat and destroy enemy forces and seize terrain, resources, and population centers. They include movement to contact, attack, exploitation, and pursuit.

- **Defensive.** Defensive operations are operations conducted to defeat an enemy attack, gain time, economize forces, and develop conditions favorable for offensive and stability tasks. These operations include mobile defense, area defense, and retrograde.
- **Stability operations (or defense support of civil authorities).** Stability operations are military missions, tasks, and activities conducted outside the United States to maintain or reestablish a safe and secure environment and to provide essential governmental services, emergency infrastructure reconstruction, and humanitarian relief. They include five tasks: establish civil security, establish civil control, restore essential services, support to governance, and support to economic and infrastructure development. Homeland defense and defense support of civil authorities represent Department of Defense support to U.S. civil authorities for domestic emergencies, law enforcement support, and other domestic activities, or from qualifying entities for special events. They include the tasks: provide support for domestic disasters; provide support for domestic chemical, biological, radiological, nuclear, and high-yield explosives incidents; provide support for domestic civilian law enforcement agencies; and provide other designated support.

1-36. The simultaneous conduct of decisive action requires careful assessment, prior planning, and unit preparation as commanders shift their combinations of decisive action. For further information on decisive action refer to ADRP 3-0.

### MISSION-ESSENTIAL TASK LIST

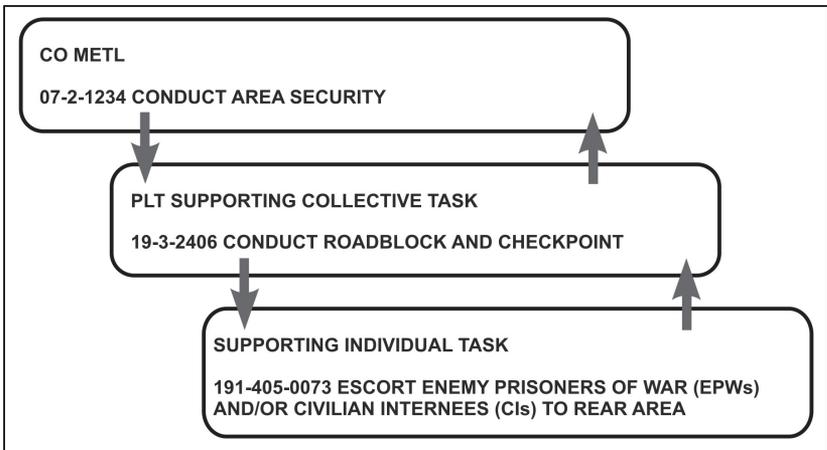
1-37. A mission-essential task list (METL) is a list of collective tasks a unit must be able to perform successfully to accomplish its doctrinal or directed mission. (Refer to ADP 7-0.) To meet the demands of decisive action, the Headquarters, Department of the Army (HQDA) has standardized METLs for brigades and above. This standardization ensures that like units deliver the same capabilities and gives the Army the strategic flexibility to provide trained and ready forces to operational-level commanders.

### TASK LIST DEVELOPMENT

1-38. The platoon leader starts with reviewing the company METL and training guidance. The platoon leader and the platoon sergeant with guidance from company commander determine what collective tasks, individual tasks, battle/crew drills, and leader tasks that support the company METL. (See Figure 1-1.) The platoon leader should include the squad and even the team leaders in this task selection process as well. Based

on the platoon leader's analysis and identification of tasks that supports the company METL, the platoon leader determines a training focus that supports the company commanders training guidance. At the completion of METL review, the platoon leader has determined:

- Collective tasks that support the company METL.
- Individual tasks that support the collective tasks.
- Resources required for training to standards.



**Figure 1-1. Collective and individual tasks supporting higher unit METL**

### Platoon Leader Analysis

1-39. The platoon leader initiates the collective task, battle drill, crew drill, and leader task identification process with an analysis of the company collective task and battle drills, company METL implementation guidance and training guidance. The platoon leader then identifies:

- The collective tasks, battle drills, crew drills, individual, and leader tasks the platoon will train.
- The collective tasks the platoon will not train and the risk for not training.
- An estimate of the time required to train.
- The conditions to train.
- Resources required.

### *Identify Collective Tasks*

1-40. The platoon leader identifies the collective tasks, battle drills, crew drills, and leader tasks to train and the estimated time required to train to

proficiency. Additionally, the platoon leader identifies those tasks the platoon can accept risk for not training.

### *Identify the Conditions*

1-41. The platoon leader gains an understanding of the operational environment that the platoon will operate in and tries to replicate the training conditions if possible. The conditions determine what resources are needed to re-create the operational environment.

1-42. The platoon leader and platoon sergeant determines the scarce and unique resources needed to train the selected collective tasks and individual tasks in the conditions previously identified. The platoon leader identifies those resources that require assistance from the company commander to obtain. Identifying these requirements first gives the company commander time for arranging and de-conflicting resources or finding alternatives.

### **Platoon Leader's Dialog**

1-43. The company commander approves the platoon supporting collective task list. The approval normally occurs during the platoon leader's dialog. The dialog is a professional discussion between the platoon leader, platoon sergeant, company commander, and first sergeant that sets the expectations for developing a platoon training plan. The platoon leader's dialog is the culminating point of task selection. In general this event:

- Is conducted face-to-face.
- Sets expectations for planning platoon training
- Identifies any training readiness problems or risks
- Sets expectations for the development of the platoon training plan.
- Identifies the training risks for those tasks not trained.

1-44. Upon completion of this dialog, the platoon leader has the necessary products to publish the platoon collective task, battle drill and leader tasks.

### **Implementation Guidance**

1-45. The platoon leader and platoon sergeant issues a document to the NCO's that summarizes the platoon leader's dialog with the company commander. This is done primarily face-to-face. It provides the NCOs and Soldiers the necessary guidance and training focus to develop platoon and crew training strategies to achieve platoon collective tasks, battle drills, leader tasks, and individual task proficiency.

## PLANNING TRAINING

1-46. Training is formally planned at company level and higher. Training plans use the collective tasks identified for training during the METL development process and the assessment of proficiency in those tasks, then translates them into training events based on the commander's visualized end state. Two types of training plans exist: long- and short-range.

1-47. Platoon leaders continuously assess the status (manning, equipping, and training) of the platoon during training and assist the commander in modifying the long-range training plan to build cohesion and achieve required METL proficiency as they move through ARFORGEN force pools. (Refer to ADP 7-0.)

## TRAINING PRODUCTS

1-48. Platoon leaders and platoon sergeants provide input to the company commander to help determine a training strategy for their platoon and prepare training plans that enable the platoon to be ready within the ARFORGEN process. Platoon leaders assist the commander in developing training plans that enable them to attain proficiency in the tasks needed to conduct operations under conditions in the OE.

1-49. Platoon leaders have available to them training products they can use to assist them in developing training events on the tasks needed to be trained:

- **Individual and collective tasks.** These training products are linked together by how they are used in training the Soldier, individually and collectively. Individual tasks are performed by individual Soldiers, and can include leader tasks as well. Collective tasks are performed by crews, sections, or platoons in order to accomplish a mission or function.
- **Combined arms training strategies.** Combined arms training strategies (CATS) are strategies detailing training events designed for specific units to train on their METL.
- **Warfighter training support packages.** Warfighter training support packages (WTSPs) are assembled products and materials that units can use during training events to achieve proficiency on their METL.
- **Unit task list.** Unit task lists (UTLs) are a grouping of collective tasks a unit can be expected to perform based upon its table of organization and equipment (TOE).

### INDIVIDUAL AND COLLECTIVE TASKS

1-50. Both individual and collective tasks are performed during platoon training in order to assess the proficiency of individuals and groups on their ability to perform the tasks to standard.

#### Individual Tasks

1-51. An individual task is a clearly defined, observable, and measurable activity accomplished by an individual. It is the lowest behavioral level in a job or duty that is performed for its own sake. An individual task supports one or more collective tasks or drills and often supports another individual task. Individual tasks can consist of both leader and staff tasks.

- **Leader tasks.** An individual task (skill level 2 or higher) a leader performs that is integral to the performance of a collective task.
- **Staff tasks.** A clearly defined and measurable activity or action performed by a staff (collective) or a staff member (individual) of an organization that supports a commander in the exercise of unit mission command.

#### Collective Tasks

1-52. A collective task is a clearly defined, observable, and measurable activity or action that requires organized team or unit performance, leading to the accomplishment of a mission or function. Collective task accomplishment requires the performance to standard of supporting individual or collective tasks. Collective tasks can consist of both shared and unique tasks.

- **Shared.** A shared collective task is a collective task that applies to or is performed by more than one type unit. Since the task, conditions, standards, task steps, and performance measures of shared collective tasks do not change, the collective task is trained and performed in the same way by all units that “share” the task.
- **Unique.** A unique collective task is a clearly defined, unit-specific collective task. For a collective task to be classified unique, no other unit or proponent (such as Infantry or Engineers) may have the capability or requirement to perform the task. The designated proponent is solely responsible for the development and maintenance of a unique collective task.

1-53. These tasks are primarily performed in the operational domain, so the emphasis is on unit performance. Each collective task contains information that includes:

- **Assessment information.** Platoon leaders can review the measures of performance and measures of success and if the platoon had performed those previously and what the assessment was when performed. If an assessment was conducted, this assessment can provide needed information advising if the platoon has performed the tasks and is considered Trained, Partially Trained, or Untrained (T, P, or U).
- **General information.** This refers to task title, warfighting function.
- **Task data, conditions and standards.**
- **Task attributes.** This refers to whether the task is trained at night, under MOPP conditions, and the task steps.
- **Supporting information.** This refers to products/references, individual tasks, drills, and collective tasks, as well as the prerequisite collective tasks.

### Unit Task Lists

1-54. The unit task list (UTL) is a product of mission analysis that identifies all of the collective tasks (shared and unique) that a unit is organized, manned and equipped to conduct. The UTL is produced for each unit with a TOE/Modified TOE (MTOE) or table of distribution and allowance (TDA).

1-55. The UTL can comprise existing collective tasks, or collective tasks identified to be designed and developed. The UTL provides the baseline for a unit CATS. A training developer creates the UTL by linking collective tasks to those missions identified on the TOE. This process ensures that units train the appropriate tasks to required proficiency levels.

### UTL Locations

1-56. An assembled UTL is located in Appendix A of this TC.

1-57. The UTL is also maintained and accessed within the Digital Training Management System (DTMS).

### Digital Training Management System

1-58. The DTMS. is a Web-based training management system that allows the unit to conduct mission and METL development; training planning and management; and track unit training by implementing the doctrine, tactics, techniques, and procedures outlined in ADP 7-0

### **Combined Arms Training Strategy**

1-59. The CATS is the Army's overarching strategy for the current and future training of the force. It describes how the Army trains the total force to standard in the institution, unit, and through self-development. It also identifies, quantifies, and justifies the training resources required to execute the training. Unit CATS are built using the unit missions, the UTL, and are designed to reflect the METL. The CATS have replaced mission training plans (MTPs). CATS provide a training path with recommendations of what, who to train. The CATS support the platoon task selections within the company METL Training and are synchronized with ARFORGEN.

#### ***Types of CATS***

1-60. Combined arms training strategies are based on the unit's TOE mission (that support the METL), employment, capabilities and functions. There are two types of CATS: unit and functional.

#### ***Unit CATS***

1-61. Unit CATS are TOE-based and unique to a unit type. Unit CATS development considers organizational structure, METL, and doctrine to organize the unit's collective tasks in a strategy that provides a path for achieving task proficiency.

1-62. A CATS comprises a menu of task selections that provide a base strategy for unit commanders to plan, prepare, and assess training to provide a flexible training strategy. A CATS are also designed to train a capability with supporting training events and resources. The events are designed to be trained in a logical sequence, starting with the lowest echelon and adding echelons as the events get progressively more complex. The culminating, or run event, for a CATS is usually the highest level event designed to train and/or evaluate the entire unit.

1-63. Unit CATS provide commanders and platoon leaders a training strategy from which they develop their unit training plan to achieve collective task proficiency, as well as support the ARFORGEN phases. These strategies are flexible and are not intended to constrain leaders, but rather provide them with a menu of core mission/capabilities based training events. They provide leaders with a method to train all tasks that a unit is designed to perform and estimate the required resources to support event driven training. Unit CATS provide leaders with tools to plan, prepare for, and evaluate unit training.

***Functional CATS***

1-64. Functional CATSs address a functional capability common to multiple units and echelons. Functional CATS supplement unit CATS. They may be based on missions or functions performed by most units that are not unique to a specific unit type, or they may be developed to train warfighting functions (WFF) or operational themes that were not incorporated into unit CATS. Two examples of functional CATS are mission command (currently listed in CATS as command and control), and force protection. Functional CATS contain most of the same data elements as unit CATS.

**Task Selections**

1-65. Task selections describe a specific capability/mission, and include collective tasks that support developing that capability. A frequency of training and the types of events that could be used to train the capability are also recommended.

1-66. Task selections are usually trained utilizing a series of crawl-walk-run events. Crawl-walk-run events provide options to accommodate training at the appropriate level of difficulty based on training readiness assessment. Each event provides recommendations for who and how to train, and resources required which support that training.

1-67. Platoon leaders can consolidate the necessary collective and individual tasks they determine are needed to be trained to support the METs, which helps them determine the time, and resources needed to train these tasks to proficiency. A matrix showing the CATS task selections used within the Infantry platoon that support the task groups of the higher unit's METL are located in Appendix C.

**Training Events**

1-68. Platoon leaders organize collective and individual tasks into standard Army training events. When conducted, they adhere to the principles of training mentioned earlier in this chapter.

1-69. Platoon leaders can also develop training events internally, such as classes and sergeants time training (STT), when using the crawl-walk-run training path. A platoon's progress through its training plan is based on time available and the platoon leaders and commander's assessment of task proficiency using the doctrinal process of assessing the training events.

**CATS Locations**

1-70. CATS is available online digitally from both DTMS and the ATN. In a digital format, CATS provides numerous links to training materials, which

can assist the commander and platoon leaders to develop the commander's plan and to conduct training.

### **Warfighter Training Support Packages**

1-71. The warfighter training support package (WTSP) is a complete, stand alone, exportable training package integrating training products and materials needed to train one or more collective tasks and supporting critical individual tasks. WTSPs are task-based information packages that provide structured situational training scenarios for LVCG unit or institutional training.

1-72. Warfighter training support packages assist platoon leaders in training the collective tasks that support the company METL. Each WTSP includes materials to support planning, preparing, executing and assessing training exercises at respective echelons. The WTSP can aid the platoon leader throughout the UTM of the unit during various training exercises.

### **Warfighter Training Support Package Locations**

1-73. Warfighter training support packages are exportable for use by the unit, unlike CATS and UTLs that can be accessed through DTMS or the ATN. The company WTSPs are located within the MCoE Collective Training Branch website on Army Knowledge Online (AKO). To access this website:

- Log into AKO.
- Copy and paste the Web address, (<https://www.us.army.mil/suite/grouppage/130823>), into the address bar.
- Select enter.
- Select desired WTSP.

## **LIVE, VIRTUAL, CONSTRUCTIVE, AND GAMING TRAINING**

1-74. Platoon leaders can use LVCG to enhance training, replicate battlefield conditions, balance resources, and sustain readiness. Utilizing simulations within their platoon training enables platoon leaders to maximize many of the principles of training and to manage scarce resources.

### **LIVE**

1-75. Live training is executed in field conditions using tactical equipment. It involves real people operating real systems.

1-76. Live training may be enhanced by training aids, devices, simulators, and simulations (TADSS) and tactical engagement simulation (TES) to simulate combat conditions. Use of simulation (CCMK) is used to adversely improve a unit marksmanship caliber. Homestation Instrumented Training System (1-HITS) provides position location and weapons effects data for real-time exercise monitoring and After Action Review (AAR). Capability. Instrumentable Multiple Integrated Laser Engagement System (I-MILES) has replaced basic Miles currently fielded. This system provides real-time casualty effects necessary for tactical engagements training in direct-fire, force-on-force training scenarios and instrumented training scenarios.

---

*Note.* No enhanced training can duplicate firing live rounds.

---

## **VIRTUAL**

1-77. Virtual training is training executed using computer-generated battlefields in simulators with the approximate characteristics of tactical weapon systems and vehicles. Virtual training is used to exercise motor control, decision making, and communication skills.

1-78. Sometimes called “human-in-the-loop training,” it involves real people operating simulated systems. Soldiers being trained practice the skills needed to operate actual equipment.

1-79. An example of virtual training is the Close Combat Tactical Trainer (CCTT). This system is equipped with the latest Force XXI Battle Command Brigade-and Below (FBCB2) in support of training the digital force. Dismounted Soldier (DS) is part of the Close Combat Tactical Trainer (CCTT) program. It provides the capability to train Soldiers and units in all three elements of decisive action described in ADP 3-0.

## **CONSTRUCTIVE**

1-80. Constructive training uses computer models and simulations to exercise command and staff functions. It involves simulated people operating simulated systems.

1-81. Constructive training can be conducted by units from platoon through echelons above corps. A command post exercise is an example of constructive training. (CPOW). Other examples are Multiuser On-line Virtual Exercise (Move) and hands-on-trainer (HOT).

## **GAMING**

1-82. Gaming is the use of technology employing commercial or government off-the-shelf, multigenre games in a realistic, semi-immersive

environment to support education and training. The military uses gaming technologies to create capabilities to help train individuals and organizations.

1-83. Gaming can enable individual, collective, and multiechelon training. Gaming can operate in a stand-alone environment or be integrated with live, virtual, or constructive enablers. It can also be used for individual education. Employed in a realistic, semi-immersive environment, gaming can simulate operations and capabilities. Examples of gaming are Virtual Battlespace System 2 (VBS2) is a fully interactive three –dimensional system that provides a premium synthetic environment suitable for military training DARWARS Ambush; it involves convoy operation training and also includes platoon level mounted infantry tactics and dismounted operations; Urban Simulation (URBANISM); and Command Post of the Future (CPOF).

## Chapter 2

# Crosswalk and Outlines

This chapter provides the Infantry platoon leader examples of a supporting collective task to the company METL crosswalk along with the training and evaluation outlines (T&EOs). Each of these items can assist the platoon leader in developing training plans and conducting training.

### SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASK TO COMPANY METL CROSSWALK

2-1. Platoon leaders focus their training efforts on training collective tasks that support the company METL. One of the many responsibilities of the platoon leader is to determine which tasks to train. This crosswalk is a tool the platoon leaders can use as a starting point for selecting the supporting collective task to company METL. The supporting collective task to the company METL crosswalk is an example developed by the Directorate of Training and Doctrine, MCoE. (See Table 2-2.) The crosswalk identifies those tasks that support the company MET. The supporting collective tasks that support the company METL are aligned on the left side of the matrix. The “X” identifies the supporting collective tasks that support the MET.

**Table 2-1. Primary references for conducting decisive actions**

Decisive Action	References
Offensive, Defensive, and Security Operations	FM 3-21.10, <i>The Infantry Rifle Company</i> . FM 3-90.1, <i>Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team</i> . FM 3-21.8, <i>The Infantry Rifle Platoon and Squad</i> .
Stability Operations	FM 3-07, <i>Stability Operations</i> .
Defense Support of Civil Authorities	FM 3-28, <i>Civil Support Operations</i> .

**Table 2-2. Example Infantry platoon supporting collective tasks to company METL crosswalk**

<i>INF Platoon</i>		<i>METs and Task Groups</i>						
		<b>Attack</b>		<b>Defend</b>	<b>Security</b>		<b>Stability</b>	
<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>Movement to Contact</b>	<b>Deliberate Attack</b>	<b>Area Defense</b>	<b>Screen</b>	<b>Recon</b>	<b>Area Security</b>	<b>Public Order &amp; Safety</b>
07-2-1090	Conduct a Movement to Contact (Platoon-Company)	X						
07-2-1256	Conduct an Attack by Fire (Platoon-Company)	X	X					
07-2-9001	Conduct an Attack (Platoon-Company)		X					
07-2-9008	Conduct a Raid (Platoon-Company)		X					
07-3-9018	Enter and Clear a Building (Section-Platoon)		X				X	
07-2-3000	Conduct Support by Fire (Platoon-Company)	X	X					
07-2-1495	Conduct an Air Assault (Platoon-Company) (I & S BCT Only)	X	X					
07-2-9002	Conduct Bypass (Platoon-Company)	X	X					
17-2-3070	Breach an Obstacle (Platoon-Company)	X	X				X	
07-2-9003	Conduct a Defense (Platoon-Company)			X				
07-2-9004	Conduct a Delay (Platoon-Company)			X				
07-2-9009	Conduct a Withdrawal (Platoon-Company)			X	X			
07-2-9012	Conduct a Relief in Place (Platoon-Company)			X			X	

**Table 2-2. Example Infantry Platoon Supporting Collective Tasks to Company METL Crosswalk (continued)**

<i>INF Platoon</i>		<i>METs and Task Groups</i>						
		<b>Attack</b>		<b>Defend</b>	<b>Security</b>			<b>Stability</b>
<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>Movement to Contact</b>	<b>Deliberate Attack</b>	<b>Area Defense</b>	<b>Screen</b>	<b>Recon</b>	<b>Area Security</b>	<b>Public Order &amp; Safety</b>
17-2-9225	Conduct a Screen (Platoon-Company)				X			
17-2-4000	Conduct Route Reconnaissance (Platoon-Company) (H & S BCT Only)					X	X	X
17-2-4010	Conduct Zone Reconnaissance (Platoon-Company)					X	X	X
17-2-4011	Conduct Area Reconnaissance (Platoon-Company)				X			
07-2-1324	Conduct Area Security (Platoon-Company)						X	X
07-2-1450	Secure Routes (Platoon-Company) (H & S BCT Only)						X	X
19-3-2406	Conduct Roadblock and Checkpoint Operations						X	X
19-3-2007	Conduct Convoy Security (H & S BCT Only)						X	X
07-2-4054	Secure Civilians during Operations (Platoon-Company)						X	X
07-2-3036	Integrate Indirect Fire Support	X	X	X	X	X	X	

**Table 2-2. Example Infantry Platoon Supporting Collective Tasks to Company METL Crosswalk (continued)**

<i>INF Platoon</i>		<i>METs and Task Groups</i>						
		<b>Attack</b>		<b>Defend</b>	<b>Security</b>			<b>Stability</b>
<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>Movement to Contact</b>	<b>Deliberate Attack</b>	<b>Area Defense</b>	<b>Screen</b>	<b>Recon</b>	<b>Area Security</b>	<b>Public Order &amp; Safety</b>
07-2-5027	Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Platoon-Company)	X	X	X			X	
07-2-9006	Conduct Passage of Lines as Passing Unit (Platoon-Company)	X	X			X		
07-2-9007	Conduct Passage of Lines as Stationary Unit (Platoon-Company)			X				
63-2-4546	Conduct Logistics Package (LOGPAC) Support			X			X	X
03-2-9224	Conduct Operational Decontamination	X	X	X			X	
08-2-0003	Treat Casualties	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
08-2-0004	Evacuate Casualties	X	X	X	X	X	X	X

## TRAINING AND EVALUATION OUTLINES

### INTRODUCTION

2-2. This section provides the METL supporting collective tasks in the form of training and evaluation outlines. All T&EOs support unit missions, and individual T&EOs may support multiple missions within the decisive action operations.

2-3. Task outlines have multiple uses. Leaders and Soldiers within the unit can use them as a reference on how to perform a task. Commanders and

leaders may use them to identify subordinate unit supporting tasks. Observers or evaluators can use them to record and document the unit's task performance.

## STRUCTURE

2-4. Each T&EO provides the task conditions and standards. They also provide a series of task steps and performance measures that serve as a logical guide for performing the task. The task steps are generally sequential, but they may be performed concurrently, or even omitted, based on the mission variables of METT-TC. The unit's ability to accomplish the task steps and performance measures indicates whether or not it is executing the task to standard. Table 2-2 lists METL tasks by METs and task groups, with task title and numbers to that specific T&EO.

## FORMAT

- 2-5. Each T&EO displayed in this TC comprises the following:
- **Task.** This is a description of the action to be performed by the unit, and provides the task number.
  - **References.** These are in parenthesis following the task number. The reference that contains the most information (primary reference) about the task is listed first.
  - **Condition.** The condition is a written statement of the situation or environment in which the unit is to do the collective task.
  - **Standard.** This states the performance criteria that a unit must achieve to successfully execute the task. This overall standard should be the focus of training and understood by every Soldier. The trainer or evaluator determines the unit's training status using performance observation measurements (where applicable) and personal judgment. The unit must be evaluated in the context of the METT-TC conditions. These conditions should be as similar as possible for all evaluated elements. This establishes a common base line for unit performance.
  - **Task steps and performance measures.** This is a listing of actions that is required to complete the task. These actions are stated in terms of observable performance for evaluating training proficiency. The task steps are arranged sequentially along with supporting individual tasks and their reference. Leader tasks within each T&EO are indicated by an asterisk (\*). Under each task step are listed the performance measures that must be accomplished to correctly perform the task step. If the unit fails

to correctly perform one of these task steps to standard, it has failed to achieve the overall task standard.

- **GO/NO-GO column.** This column is provided for annotating the unit's performance of the task steps. When assessing training, evaluate each performance measure for a task step and place an "X" in the appropriate column. A major portion of the performance measures must be marked a "GO" for the task step to be successfully performed.
- **Supporting collective tasks.** An individual task is a clearly defined, observable, and measurable activity accomplished by an individual. It is the lowest behavioral level in a job or duty that is performed for its own sake.

### USE

2-6. The T&EOs can be used to train or evaluate a single task. Several T&EOs may be used by an observer controller as an evaluation outline or by a commander as a training outline.

**TASK:** Conduct a Movement to Contact (Platoon-Company) (07-2-1090)  
 (FM 3-21.10) (FM 3-21.8)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit conducts operations as part of a higher headquarters (HQ) and receives an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct a movement to contact to gain or to regain contact with the enemy. Communications have been established, and information is being passed according to the unit standing operating procedures (SOPs). The unit receives guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the area of operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be conducted during limited visibility conditions and should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture 4 (MOPP 4).

**STANDARDS:** The unit conducts the movement to contact according to the SOP, the order, and/or the commander’s guidance. The unit leader selects the proper technique for conducting the movement to contact based on the anticipated enemy situation. The unit finds, fixes, develops the situation, and finishes the enemy. The unit moves not later than the time specified in the order, reports required intelligence information, and complies with the ROE.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>PLAN</p> <p>*1. Unit leaders gain and/or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources. Intelligence sources include company intelligence support team (CoIST), human intelligence (HUMINT), signal intelligence (SIGINT), and imagery intelligence (IMINT) to include unmanned aircraft systems (UASs), and unattended ground sensors (UGSs).</p> <p>*2. Unit leaders receive an OPORD or FRAGO and issue a warning order (WARNO) to include at a minimum:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. The mission or nature of the movement to contact.</li> <li>b. The time and place for issuing the OPORD.</li> <li>c. Units or elements participating in the movement to contact.</li> <li>d. Specific tasks not addressed by unit SOPs.</li> <li>e. The timeline for the movement to contact.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*3. Unit leaders confirm friendly and enemy situations. They take the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Receive an updated report showing the location of forward and adjacent friendly elements, if applicable.</li> <li>b. Receive an updated enemy situational template for added fratricide prevention and increased force protection, if applicable.</li> <li>c. Clarify priority intelligence requirement (PIRs).</li> <li>d. Confirm any changes to the HQ and unit task or purpose.</li> <li>e. Confirm any changes to the scheme of maneuver.</li> </ul> <p>4. Unit leaders perform the following fundamentals:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Focus all efforts on finding the enemy.</li> <li>b. Make initial contact with the smallest force possible, consistent with protecting the force.</li> <li>c. Make initial contact with small, mobile, self-contained forces to avoid decisive engagement of the main body on ground chosen by the enemy. (This allows the commander maximum flexibility to develop the situation.)</li> <li>d. Task-organize the force and use movement formations to deploy and attack rapidly in any direction.</li> <li>e. Keep forces within supporting distances to facilitate a flexible response.</li> <li>f. Maintain contact regardless of the course of action (COA) adopted once contact is gained.</li> </ul> <p>*5. Unit leaders conduct troop-leading procedures. They take the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conduct a map reconnaissance. Take the following actions:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Identify tentative rally points, if required.</li> <li>(2) Identify likely enemy avenues of approach.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Coordinate indirect fire support and or close air support, if available.</li> <li>c. Conduct direct fire planning.</li> <li>d. Plan the integration of direct and indirect fires according to HQ's fire support plan.</li> <li>e. Select the proper technique below for conducting the movement to contact, if not directed by HQ:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Search-and-attack technique.</li> <li>(2) Cordon and search.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>f. Organize the unit as needed to accomplish the mission and/or compensate for combat losses.</p> <p>g. Plan continuous operations if required.</p> <p>h. Plan and coordinate support.</p> <p>i. Determine the requirement for patrol bases/assembly area.</p> <p>j. Determine linkup requirements.</p> <p>k. Determine if movement technique is based on factors of mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC).</p> <p>l. Determine how key weapons are employed.</p> <p>m. Confirm fire control measures and engagement criteria.</p> <p>n. Address actions on contact with the enemy.</p> <p>o. Consider enemy capabilities, likely COAs, and specific weapons capabilities to understand the threat and ensure the security of the unit.</p> <p>p. Coordinate with adjacent units as required.</p> <p>q. Coordinate passage of lines if required.</p> <p>r. Decide what formations the unit uses to enter and move in the zone or area of operations, and what the contingency plans are.</p> <p>s. Conduct reconnaissance as required. (There may not be enough time to reconnoiter extensively to locate the enemy.) Take the following actions:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Confirm the most likely enemy location.</li> <li>(2) Adjust the plan based on updated intelligence and reconnaissance effort.</li> <li>(3) Update the enemy situation.</li> <li>(4) Disseminate updated reports (if applicable), overlays, and other pertinent information.</li> </ol> <p>PREPARE</p> <p>*6. Unit leaders issue clear and concise orders.</p> <p>7. The unit conducts a rehearsal.</p> <p>*8. Unit leaders issue FRAGOs, as needed, to address changes to the plan identified during the rehearsal.</p> <p>*9. Unit leaders coordinate and/or synchronize actions of subordinate elements.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*10. Unit leaders use FRAGOs as needed to redirect actions of subordinate elements. EXECUTE</p> <p>11. The unit executes search-and-attack for one or more of the following purposes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. To protect the force—prevent the enemy from massing to disrupt or destroy friendly military or civilian operations, equipment, property, and key facilities.</li> <li>b. To collect information—gain information about the enemy and the terrain to confirm the enemy course of action (ECO) predicted by the intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB) process. Help generate situational awareness (SA) for the company and HQ.</li> <li>c. To destroy the enemy and render enemy units in the AO combat ineffective.</li> <li>d. To deny the area—prevent the enemy from operating unhindered in a given area, such as in a base camp or for logistics support.</li> </ul> <p>12. The unit executes cordon and search based on the situation. (See Collective Task, Conduct a Cordon and Search (Platoon-Company) 07-2-9051.)</p> <p>*13. Unit leaders synchronize element actions. ASSESS</p> <p>14. The unit consolidates and reorganizes as needed.</p> <p>15. The unit continues operations as directed.</p> <p>*indicates a leader task step.</p>		

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
061-283-6003	Adjust Indirect Fire
071-410-0010	Conduct a Leaders Reconnaissance
071-420-0005	Conduct the Maneuver of a Platoon
171-620-0094	Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization Activities at Company-Troop Level
071-326-5503	Issue a Warning Order
071-326-5505	Issue an Operation Order at the Company, Platoon, or Squad Level
071-326-5502	Issue a Fragmentary Order
171-121-4045	Conduct Troop Leading Procedures

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
07-2-1342	Conduct Tactical Movement (Platoon-Company)
07-2-1450	Secure Routes (Platoon-Company)
07-2-3027	Integrate Direct Fires (Platoon-Company)
07-2-3036	Integrate Indirect Fire Support (Platoon-Company)
07-2-5009	Conduct a Rehearsal (Platoon-Company)
07-2-5027	Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Platoon-Company)
07-2-5063	Conduct Composite Risk Management (Platoon-Company)
07-2-6063	Maintain Operations Security (Platoon-Company)
07-2-9002	Conduct a Bypass (Platoon-Company)
07-2-9006	Conduct a Passage of Lines as the Passing Unit (Platoon-Company)
07-2-9014	Occupy an Assembly Area, (Platoon-Company)
07-3-1072	Conduct a Disengagement
07-3-9013	Conduct Action on Contact
07-3-9017	Conduct Actions at Danger Areas
08-2-0003	Treat Casualties
08-2-0004	Evacuate Casualties
07-2-9051	Conduct a Cordon and Search (Platoon-Company)
07-2-3000	Conduct a Support by Fire (Platoon-Company)
07-2-1256	Conduct a Support by Fire (Platoon-Company)

**SUPPORTING BATTLE/CREW DRILLS**

<b>Drill Number</b>	<b>Drill Title</b>
07-3-D9501	React to Contact (Visual IED, Direct Fire [includes RPG])

## Chapter 2

---

**TASK:** Conduct an Attack by Fire (Platoon-Company) (07-2-1256)  
(FM 3-21.10) (FM 3-21.8)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit conducts operations as part of a higher headquarters (HQ) and receives an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct an attack by fire. The unit is assigned a battle position (BP) and a sector of fire, an engagement area (EA), or an axis of advance and objective. The enemy may be stationary or moving. Communications are established, and information is passed according to unit standing operating procedures (SOPs). The unit receives guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be conducted during limited visibility conditions and performed in mission-oriented protective posture 4 (MOPP 4).

**STANDARDS:** The unit conducts the attack by fire according to the SOP, the order, and/or the commander's guidance.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>PLAN</p> <p>*1. Unit leaders gain and/or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources. Intelligence sources include company intelligence support team (CoIST), human intelligence (HUMINT), signal intelligence (SIGINT), and imagery intelligence (IMINT) to include unmanned aircraft systems (UASs) and unattended ground sensors (UGSs).</p> <p>*2. Unit leaders receive an OPORD or FRAGO and issue a warning order (WARNO) to include at a minimum:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>a. The mission or nature of the attack by fire.</li><li>b. The time and place for issuing the OPORD.</li><li>c. Units or elements participating in the attack by fire.</li><li>d. Specific tasks not addressed by unit SOPs.</li><li>e. The timeline for the attack by fire.</li></ul> <p>*3. Unit leaders plan using troop-leading procedures (TLPs). They take the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>a. Conduct a map reconnaissance. Take the following actions:</li></ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(1) Identify attack by fire (ABF) and sector of fire or EA.</p> <p>(2) Identify likely enemy avenues of approach or axis of advance.</p> <p>(3) Identify routes to and from the ABF positions.</p> <p>(4) Identify tentative target reference points (TRPs).</p> <p>(5) Mark tentative dismount points on maps if mounted.</p> <p>b. Plan and coordinate indirect fire support and or close air support if available.</p> <p>c. Organize the unit as necessary to accomplish the mission and or compensate for combat losses.</p> <p>d. Address actions on chance contact with the enemy.</p> <p>e. Disseminate applicable reports, overlays, and other pertinent information.</p> <p>f. Plan control measures for lifting or shifting direct and indirect fires.</p> <p>g. Ensure observers are positioned to adjust indirect fires if applicable.</p> <p>PREPARE</p> <p>*4. Unit leaders or designated representatives conduct a reconnaissance. They take the following actions:</p> <p>a. Select ABF positions that allow the unit to effectively engage the enemy and that provide adequate cover and concealment.</p> <p>b. Establish and leave security at the ABF position.</p> <p>c. Designate engagement criteria, rate of fire, weapons distribution and engagement priorities by weapons system.</p> <p>d. Update intelligence information.</p> <p>e. Return to the unit position.</p> <p>*5. Unit leaders adjust the ABF plan, if necessary, based on updated intelligence.</p> <p>*6. Unit leaders issue orders and instructions to include ROE.</p> <p>7. The unit conducts a rehearsal.</p> <p>*8. Unit leaders issue FRAGOs, as necessary, to address changes to the plan identified during the rehearsal.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>9. The unit conducts tactical movement to ABF position. It takes the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Employs appropriate formation and movement technique.</li> <li>b. Uses covered and concealed routes to prevent the enemy from effectively engaging the unit.</li> <li>c. Orients weapon systems to provide 360-degree security during movement.</li> </ul> <p>10. The unit occupies ABF position. It takes the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Confirms the position meets the following tactical considerations:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Allows the unit to place effective fires on the enemy.</li> <li>(2) Facilitates weapon standoff.</li> <li>(3) Is located on terrain affording cover and concealment.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Conducts hasty occupation of the ABF position.</li> <li>c. Designates TRPs, sectors of fire, and tentative firing positions.</li> <li>d. Begins scanning sectors of fire as designated by unit leaders.</li> </ul> <p>EXECUTE</p> <p>11. The unit observes the designated engagement areas or sectors of responsibility. It takes the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Detects all enemy entering the area.</li> <li>b. Notifies supported, flanking, and higher units of detected enemy as required.</li> </ul> <p>12. The unit executes the attack by fire against the enemy. It takes the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Acquires, suppresses, and/or destroys all identified enemy elements using appropriate weapon systems.</li> <li>b. Calls for and adjusts indirect fires to block and or destroy the enemy.</li> <li>c. Maneuvers to alternate positions as necessary to maintain effective fires on the enemy or to maintain survivability.</li> <li>d. Shifts, refocuses, and redistributes direct fires as necessary to destroy the enemy.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*13. Unit leaders direct the attack by fire until all enemy elements are destroyed, fixed, or suppressed or the order to lift or shift fires is received. They take the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Focus and distribute direct fires and shifts; refocus and redistribute fires to maintain suppression of the enemy or to destroy enemy forces.</li> <li>b. Shift indirect fires to suppress or destroy enemy vehicles or positions.</li> <li>c. Lift fires to facilitate the movement of friendly elements or when target effects are achieved.</li> <li>d. Issue additional FRAGOs to direct or task subordinate elements as required.</li> <li>e. Order a cease-fire once the enemy is destroyed or on order from the commander.</li> <li>f. Send spot reports (SPOTREPs), update SITREPs, and make recommendations to the higher commander as required.</li> </ul> <p>ASSESS</p> <p>14. The unit consolidates and reorganizes as needed.</p> <p>15. The unit continues operations as directed.</p> <p>*indicates a leader task step</p>		

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
171-610-0001	Perform a Map Reconnaissance
061-283-6003	Adjust Indirect Fire
071-410-0010	Conduct a Leaders Reconnaissance
071-326-5503	Issue a Warning Order
071-326-5502	Issue a Fragmentary Order
071-326-5505	Issue an Operation Order at the Company, Platoon, or Squad Level
171-121-4054	Conduct Troop Leading Procedures
071-326-5630	Conduct Movement Techniques by a Platoon
071-420-0005	Conduct the Maneuver of a Platoon

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
07-2-1342	Conduct Tactical Movement (Platoon-Company)
07-2-1396	Employ Obstacles (Platoon-Company)

## Chapter 2

---

07-2-3000	Conduct Support by Fire (Platoon-Company)
07-2-3027	Integrate Direct Fires (Platoon-Company)
07-2-3036	Integrate Indirect Fire Support (Platoon-Company)
07-2-5009	Conduct a Rehearsal (Platoon-Company)
07-2-5027	Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Platoon-Company)
07-2-5063	Conduct Composite Risk Management (Platoon-Company)
07-2-6063	Maintain Operations Security (Platoon-Company)
07-2-9006	Conduct a Passage of Lines as the Passing Unit (Platoon-Company)
07-3-9013	Conduct Action on Contact
07-3-9016	Establish an Observation Post
08-2-0003	Treat Casualties
08-2-0004	Evacuate Casualties

### SUPPORTING BATTLE/CREW DRILLS

<b>Drill Number</b>	<b>Drill Title</b>
07-3-D9501	React to Contact (Visual, IED, Direct Fire [includes RPG])
05-3-D0016	Conduct the 5 C's

**TASK:**Conduct an Attack (Platoon-Company) (07-2-9001)

(FM 3-21.10)

(FM 3-21.8)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit conducts operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters (HQ) and receives an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to assault an objective at the location and time specified. The unit is located in an assembly area (AA) and provides its own security. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. Indirect fire and close air support (CAS) are available. The unit communicates with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit has guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and may also have specific mission instructions, such as a peace mandate, terms of reference, and a status-of-forces agreement (SOFA). Military and civilian, joint and multinational partners, and news media may be present in the operational environment (OE). Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture 4 (MOPP 4).

**STANDARDS:** The unit conducts the attack in according to the unit standing operating procedures (SOPs), the order, and or higher commander’s guidance. The unit moves tactically from the AA to the line of departure (LD) and then to assault, support, or breach positions using the appropriate formation and technique. The unit provides supporting fires. The unit suppresses enemy forces on or near the objective, assaults the objective to destroy or capture, or forces the enemy to withdraw. The unit complies with the ROE, mission instructions, higher HQ orders, and other special orders.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>PLAN</p> <p>*1. Unit leaders receive an OPORD or a FRAGO that requires their unit to conduct an attack and issue a warning order (WARNO) to the unit according to troop-leading procedures (TLPs) and unit SOPs. (Refer to Task 07-2-5081 Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures [Platoon-Company].) The WARNO must include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Tentative unit organization for the attack, identifying the security forces, main body, reserve, and sustaining organization, as applicable.</li> <li>b. Location and tentative timeline for the attack, including movement times and no later than time for execution.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Guidance directing the unit to conduct rehearsals; initiate movement and reconnaissance tasks, and ensure the commander’s critical information requirements (CCIRs).</p> <p>d. Instructions to obtain markers and special breach equipment, if needed, and other special equipment or additional supplies required for the attack.</p> <p>*2. Unit leaders develop a tentative plan according to the TLPs. They take the following actions:</p> <p>a. Conduct mission analysis, using company intelligence support team (CoIST), focusing on the mission given, enemy forces and their capabilities, terrain and weather effects, troops and time available to execute the operation, and civil considerations. They should take advantage of maps, imagery, unmanned aircraft systems (UASs), unattended ground sensors (UGSs), and other available capabilities.</p> <p>b. Develop a tentative course of action by taking the following actions:</p> <p>(1) Identify a tentative objective rally point (ORP), if necessary, and a tentative assault position.</p> <p>(2) Identify tentative security, support by fire, and assault positions.</p> <p>(3) Identify routes to and from the ORP, if used, and objective.</p> <p>(4) Mark tentative dismount and/or remount points on maps as appropriate.</p> <p>(5) Plan, integrate, and coordinate direct fire support, indirect fire support, and/or CAS to achieve one or more operational goals during each phase of the operation. These goals comprise plans to:</p> <p>(a) Suppress enemy antitank or other weapon systems that inhibit movement.</p> <p>(b) Fix or neutralize bypassed enemy elements.</p> <p>(c) Prepare enemy positions for an assault.</p> <p>(d) Obscure enemy observation or screen friendly maneuver.</p> <p>(e) Support breaching operations.</p> <p>(f) Illuminate enemy positions.</p> <p>(g) Employ available weapons systems (tanks, antiarmor) according to doctrine.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(6) Plan and coordinate sustainment activities to assist maneuver elements in maintaining the momentum of the attack, including plans for:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) The increased consumption of Class III and Class V supplies.</li> <li>(b) Casualty evacuation.</li> <li>(c) Increased equipment maintenance requirements.</li> <li>(d) Positioning sustainment assets as far forward as possible.</li> </ul> <p>(7) Develop control measures for movement to the objective and fire support throughout the operation.</p> <p>(8) Develop contingency plans for actions on chance contact with the enemy crossing of LDAs identified during mission analysis.</p> <p>(9) Conduct composite risk management to identify, assess, develop, and implement controls for hazards and to mitigate associated risks. (Refer to Task 07-2-5063, Conduct Composite Risk Management [Platoon-Company].)</p> <p>(10) Task-organize the unit into a support, assault, breach element, and security force accounting for special tasks such as quartering parties and reconnaissance and surveillance (R&amp;S) teams.</p> <p>3. The unit begins necessary movement to meet all required timelines indicated in the OPORD.</p> <p>*4. Unit leaders conduct a leader's reconnaissance. They take the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Pinpoint the objective.</li> <li>b. Establish security at the objective.</li> <li>c. Determine the enemy's size, location, disposition, and most probable course of action on the objective.</li> <li>d. Determine where the enemy is most vulnerable to attack and where the support element can best place fires on the objective.</li> <li>e. Verify and update intelligence information.</li> <li>f. Determine whether to conduct the assault mounted or dismounted, if applicable.</li> <li>g. Select security, support, and assault positions.</li> <li>h. Leave a surveillance team to observe the objective.</li> <li>i. Return to the unit position.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*5. Unit leaders adjust the plan based on updated intelligence and reconnaissance efforts.</p> <p>*6. Unit leaders issue the OPORD and use FRAGOs, as necessary, to redirect actions of subordinate elements.</p> <p><b>PREPARE</b></p> <p>7. The unit prepares for attack by taking the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducting a rehearsal.</li> <li>b. Completing final inspections.</li> </ul> <p>*8. Unit leaders supervise subordinate TLPs to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the unit commander’s intent.</p> <p>9. The unit issues FRAGOs as needed to address changes to the plan identified during the rehearsal.</p> <p><b>EXECUTE</b></p> <p>10. The unit executes the attack. It takes the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Moves to the line of departure (LD) using a technique and formation based on the factors of METT-TC (may be executed by other unit leaders while the unit leader is forward conducting a leader’s reconnaissance).</li> <li>b. Navigates from checkpoint to checkpoint or phase line by using basic land navigation skills supplemented by precision navigation.</li> <li>c. Moves from the LD through the assault position to support positions, assault positions, or breach or bypass sites. Pauses in the assault position, if absolutely necessary, to ensure synchronization of all friendly forces. Takes the following actions: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Moves using the designated and/or appropriate movement technique.</li> <li>(2) Uses cover and concealment.</li> <li>(3) Communicates primarily by FM radio and signals (embedded digital reports if applicable) during movement.</li> <li>(4) Uses smoke and supporting fire if detected.</li> <li>(5) Executes contingency plans developed by the unit leader, if needed.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. Conducts the assault mounted. (A mounted assault is only conducted against light resistance or when there are no heavy antiarmor weapons on the objective.) Takes the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Does not stop after moving forward of the assault position.</li> <li>(2) Controls supporting fires to support risk management initiatives.</li> <li>(3) Isolates the objective, which includes:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Preventing the enemy from reinforcing the objective.</li> <li>(b) Placing suppressive fires on the most dangerous enemy positions.</li> <li>(c) Maintaining visual observation of suppressive fires just forward of the breach and assault elements.</li> <li>(d) Positioning or repositioning security elements and weapons systems to provide continual suppressive fire to aid the actions of the assault element as it moves across the objective.</li> <li>(e) Using FM radio or predetermined visual signals to communicate with the breach and assault elements.</li> </ul> </li> <li>(4) Conducts initial breach of obstacles, if required.</li> <li>(5) Assaults the objective, which includes:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Leading with tanks, if available, and uses armed vehicles to provide supporting fires while moving.</li> <li>(b) Moving onto the objective by conducting fire and movement.</li> <li>(c) Dismounting if the enemy begins to place effective antiarmor fires on assaulting element. (Vehicles move to support positions.)</li> <li>(d) Using indirect fires to isolate portions of the objective area to obscure enemy element and/or to screen the movement of the assault element.</li> <li>(e) Ensuring bypassed enemy cannot place effective fires on tanks and or armed vehicles.</li> <li>(f) Destroying enemy forces, captures enemy forces, and/or forces their withdrawal from the objective area according to the unit leader's intent.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>e. Conducts the assault dismounted. Takes the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Does not stop after moving forward of the assault position.</li> <li>(2) Controls supporting fires to support risk management initiatives.</li> </ul> <p>f. Isolates and suppresses the enemy on the objective. Takes the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Prevents the enemy from reinforcing or leaving from the objective.</li> <li>(2) Places suppressive fires on the most dangerous enemy positions.</li> <li>(3) Shifts suppressive fires to allow the breach element to penetrate the objective.</li> <li>(4) Maintains visual observation of suppressive fires just forward of the breach and assault elements.</li> <li>(5) Positions or repositions weapons systems to provide continual suppressive fire to aid the actions of the assault element as it moves across the objective (done by unit leader or designated representative).</li> <li>(6) Uses FM radio or predetermined visual signals to communicate with the breach and assault element or both.</li> </ul> <p>g. Conducts initial breach of obstacles, if required.</p> <p>h. Assaults the objective. Takes the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Uses armed vehicles to provide supporting fires, if available.</li> <li>(2) Moves onto the objective by conducting fire and movement.</li> <li>(3) Uses indirect fires to isolate portions of the objective area to obscure enemy element and/or to screen the movement of the assault element.</li> <li>(4) Ensures bypassed enemy cannot place effective fires on unit elements.</li> <li>(5) Destroys enemy forces, captures enemy forces, and/or forces their withdrawal from the objective area according to the unit leader's intent.</li> </ul> <p>i. Occupies defensible positions as needed. Takes the following actions:</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(1) Assaults through the objective to occupy defensible terrain beyond the objective.</p> <p>(2) Prepares for a counterattack.</p> <p>11. The unit conducts consolidation and reorganization. (Refer to Task 07-2-5027 Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization [Platoon-Company].) It takes the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Establishes security on the objective.</li> <li>b. Conducts reconnaissance of area.</li> <li>c. Reorganizes elements and mans keys weapons to compensate for combat losses.</li> <li>d. Redistributes ammo, supplies, and equipment as needed.</li> <li>e. Secures, processes, and evacuates enemy prisoners of war and/or other detainees according to unit SOPs and METT-TC.</li> <li>f. Treats and evacuates casualties.</li> <li>g. Processes captured documents and or equipment as required.</li> <li>h. Reports SITREP to higher using Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2), FM, or other tactical means.</li> </ul> <p>ASSESS</p> <p>12. The unit continues operations as directed.</p> <p>* indicates a leader task step.</p>		

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
171-121-4045	Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures
171-610-0001	Perform a Map Reconnaissance
071-326-5630	Conduct Movement Techniques by a Platoon
171-121-3009	Control Techniques of Movement
061-283-6003	Adjust Indirect Fire
071-025-0007	Engage Targets with an M240B Machine Gun
071-010-0006	Engage Targets with an M249 Machine Gun
301-348-1050	Report Information of Potential Intelligence Value

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
07-2-1342	Conduct Tactical Movement (Platoon-Company)
07-2-3000	Conduct Support by Fire (Platoon-Company)
07-2-3027	Integrate Direct Fires (Platoon-Company)
07-2-3036	Integrate Indirect Fire Support (Platoon-Company)
07-2-4054	Secure Civilians During Operations (Platoon-Company)
07-2-5009	Conduct a Rehearsal (Platoon-Company)
07-2-5027	Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Platoon-Company)
07-2-6045	Employ Camouflage, Concealment, and Deception Techniques (Platoon-Company)
07-2-9006	Conduct a Passage of Lines as the Passing Unit (Platoon-Company)
07-3-9013	Conduct Action on Contact
07-3-9017	Conduct Actions at Danger Areas
08-2-0003	Treat Casualties
08-2-0004	Evacuate Casualties
44-3-3220	Perform Passive Air Defense Measures
44-3-3221	Perform Active Air Defense Measures

**SUPPORTING BATTLE/CREW DRILLS**

<b>Drill Number</b>	<b>Drill Title</b>
07-3-D9501	React to Contact (Visual, IED, Direct Fire [includes RPG])
07-3-D9410	Enter a Trench to Secure a Foothold
07-3-D9412	Breach of a Mined Wire Obstacle

**TASK:** Conduct a Raid (Platoon – Company) (07-2-9008)

(FM 3-21.10)                      (FM 3-21.8)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit conducts operations as part of a higher headquarters (HQ) and receives an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct a raid. Indirect fire and close air support (CAS) are available. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons. Unit has received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture 4 (MOPP 4).

**STANDARDS:** The unit conducts the raid in according to standing operating procedures (SOPs), the order, and or higher commander’s guidance. Unit surprises the enemy, assaults the objective to achieve the intent of the raid, and conducts withdrawal from the objective area. The unit complies with the ROE, mission instructions, higher HQ orders, and other special orders.

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO-GO</b>
<p><b>PLAN</b>                      *1. Unit leaders receive an operation order (OPORD) or a fragmentary order (FRAGO) directing their unit to conduct a raid and issue a warning order (WARNO) to the unit according to unit SOPs. The WARNO must include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Tentative location and timeline for the raid, including movement times and time for execution.</li> <li>b. Tentative unit organization for the raid, identifying the main effort and supporting efforts (support by fire, quartering parties, security, and so forth).</li> <li>c. Guidance directing the unit to conduct rehearsals (especially actions on the objective and special teams); begin any initial movement; and initiate surveillance, reconnaissance tasks and commander’s critical information requirements (CCIRs).</li> <li>d. Instructions to obtain markers and special breach equipment as well as any other special equipment or additional supplies required for the mission.</li> </ul>		

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO-GO</b>
<p>*2. Unit leaders conduct troop-leading procedures and makes coordination for the operation. They take the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conduct mission analysis by using company intelligence support team (CoIST) focusing on the mission given, enemy forces and their capabilities, terrain and weather effects, troops available, time available to execute the operation, and civil considerations (METT-TC); taking advantage of maps, imagery, unmanned aircraft systems (UASs), unattended ground sensors (UGSs), and other available capabilities.</li> <li>b. Develop a tentative course of action. Take the following actions:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Identify a tentative objective rally point (ORP) that :                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Offers good cover and concealment.</li> <li>(b) Is out of sight and sound of the objective.</li> <li>(c) Is off natural lines of drift.</li> </ul> </li> <li>Is easily defensible for a short time.</li> <li>(3) Identify tentative support by fire and assault positions that meet the higher commander’s intent for the raid.</li> <li>(3) Identify likely enemy avenues of approach to ensure isolation of the objective.</li> <li>(4) Identify routes to and from the ORP and objective, ensuring that they are different enough to prevent enemy interdiction during exfiltration from the objective.</li> <li>(5) Mark tentative dismount points on maps as appropriate.</li> </ul> </li> <li>c. Establish control measures to coordinate fire and maneuver on the objective.</li> <li>d. Organize the unit as necessary to accomplish the mission and or compensate for combat losses. Takes the following actions:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Designate a support, assault, and breach element as required.</li> <li>(2) Identify special teams as needed (demolition, EPW, aid and litter, and so forth).</li> </ul> </li> <li>e. Designate the withdrawal sequence.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>f. Coordinate for supporting warfighting function.</p> <p>g. Plan the integration of CAS, direct and indirect fires according to higher HQs’ fire support plan.</p> <p>h. Develop contingency plans for enemy contact.</p> <p>i. Conduct risk management to identify, assess, develop, and implement controls for hazards and to mitigate associated risks.</p> <p>PREPARE</p> <p>*3. Unit leaders issue an OPORD, disseminates reports, overlays, instructions on ROE, and other pertinent information to each element to keep them abreast of the situation.</p> <p>4. The unit prepares for mission. It takes the following actions:</p> <p>a. Refines the plan based on continuously updated intelligence.</p> <p>b. Conducts pre-combat checks to ensure the unit leader’s guidance for cross load of equipment, soldier’s load, and special items of equipment are met.</p> <p>c. Conducts rehearsals on actions on the objective, occupation of the ORP and movement to the objective if permits.</p> <p>EXECUTE</p> <p>5. The unit moves tactically to the ORP. It takes the following actions:</p> <p>a. Secures the ORP.</p> <p>b. Leaves a contingency plan with the senior unit leader remaining at the ORP.</p> <p>*6. Unit leaders or designated representatives and reconnaissance elements, conduct the reconnaissance based on factors of METT-TC. They take the following actions:</p> <p>a. Pinpoint the objective.</p> <p>b. Verify and update intelligence information.</p> <p>c. Establish security at the objective.</p> <p>d. Select security, support, and assault positions.</p> <p>e. Leave a surveillance team to observe the objective.</p> <p>f. Return to the ORP.</p>		

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO-GO</b>
<p>*7. Unit leaders adjust the plan based on rehearsals, updated intelligence, and reconnaissance effort and recommends to higher HQ the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Aborts if the combat power of the enemy significantly alters the engagement ratio.</li> <li>b. Aborts if enemy activity in the target area is significantly increased, movement of outside elements in the area is detected, or increased air coverage is present.</li> <li>c. Continues with the raid.</li> </ul> <p>*8. Unit leaders issue FRAGOs, as needed, to redirect actions of subordinate elements.</p> <p>9. The unit elements move from the ORP to support or assault positions. It takes the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Moves using the designated appropriate technique.</li> <li>b. Attempts to breach any obstacle it cannot bypass.</li> </ul> <p>*10. Unit leaders coordinate and/or synchronize actions of the support and assault elements.</p> <p>*11. Unit leaders set the conditions for the raid by employing one or more of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Screening or obscuring smoke to isolate enemy forces from friendly forces.</li> <li>b. Directing fires to fix adjacent or reserve enemy elements, preventing them from repositioning or reinforcing the objective area.</li> <li>c. Using indirect fires, direct fires, CAS, or attack aviation to suppress and or destroy enemy forces on the objective.</li> </ul> <p>12. The unit executes the raid by taking the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducting the raid dismounted, which includes the following actions: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Employ indirect fires to isolate portions of the objective area, to obscure enemy element, and or to screen the movement of friendly elements.</li> <li>(2) Surprise the enemy.</li> <li>(3) Increase the volume and accuracy of fires to suppress and or destroy enemy vehicles and fighting positions.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(4) Conduct initial breach of obstacles, if required to penetrate the enemy’s protective obstacle belt.</p> <p>(5) Lift or shift fires as assault element moves beyond the obstacle.</p> <p>(6) Assault onto the objective by conducting fire and maneuver (assaulting elements).</p> <p>(7) Achieve the intent of the raid.</p> <p>b. Conducting the raid mounted.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> If conducting the raid mounted, armed vehicles normally occupy hide positions in the ORP until ordered to initiate the raid. Soldier carrier vehicles normally remain in hide/support positions while dismounted Soldiers assault the objective by:</p> <p>(1) Employing indirect fires to isolate portions of the objective area, to obscure enemy element, and/or to screen the movement of friendly elements.</p> <p>(2) Maintaining radio silence.</p> <p>(3) Increasing the volume and accuracy of fires to suppress and/or destroy enemy vehicles and fighting positions.</p> <p>(4) Commencing fires and advances toward the object (assault element).</p> <p>(5) Assaulting onto the objective by conducting fire and maneuver (assaulting elements).</p> <p>(6) Achieving the intent of the raid.</p> <p>13. The unit occupies designated defensible positions to complete actions on the objective, as necessary, and takes the following actions:</p> <p>a. Completes EPW search, processes captured equipment and documents.</p> <p>b. Treats and prepares casualties for movement off the objective.</p> <p>c. Conducts a hasty reorganization on the objective, redistributing ammunition and manning key weapons systems for the withdrawal.</p> <p><b>ASSESS</b></p> <p>14. The unit leader assesses the situation and reports to higher, as required, by taking the following actions.</p> <p>a. Compiles element leaders SITREPs.</p>		

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO-GO</b>
b. Submits updated SITREP to the higher HQ commander as necessary. 15. The elements withdraw from the objective in the sequence designated in the OPORD to a pre-determined covered and concealed position away from the objective area. 16. The unit consolidates and reorganizes, as needed. 17. The unit continues operations as directed. *indicates a leader task step.		

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
191-377-4254	Search a Detainee
071-410-0010	Conduct a Leader’s Reconnaissance
061-283-6003	Adjust Indirect Fire
071-420-0005	Conduct the Maneuver of a Platoon
071-326-5630	Conduct Movement Techniques by a Platoon
071-450-0017	Conduct a Raid by a Platoon

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
07-2-1342	Conduct Tactical Movement (Platoon-Company)
07-2-3018	Employ Snipers (Platoon-Company)
07-2-3036	Integrate Indirect Fire Support (Platoon-Company)
07-2-9014	Occupy an Assembly Area (Platoon-Company)
07-3-9013	Conduct Action on Contact
07-3-9017	Conduct Actions at Danger Areas
08-2-0003	Treat Casualties
08-2-0004	Evacuate Casualties

**SUPPORTING BATTLE/CREW DRILLS**

<b>Drill Number</b>	<b>Drill Title</b>
07-3-D9502	React to Ambush (Near)
07-3-D9501	React to Contact (Visual, IED, Direct Fire [includes RPG])

**TASK:** Enter and Clear a Building (Section-Platoon) (07-3-9018)

(ATTP 3-06.11) (FM 3-21.8)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit conducts operations as part of a higher headquarters (HQ) and receives an operation order (OPORD) or a fragmentary order (FRAGO) to enter and clear a building at the location and time specified. The intelligence report indicated that the building had occupants of unknown hostility to friendly forces. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. Unit has established communications with required headquarters/units at all echelons. All other likely entry and exit points and the area around the building are covered by another unit. Unit has received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE). Civilians, government agencies, nongovernment organizations (NGOs), and local and international media may be in the area. Some iterations of this task should be performed under should be performed under the mission variables of: mission given, enemy forces and their capabilities, terrain and weather effects, troops available, time available to execute the operation, and civil considerations (METT-TC), which are conditions that aid or limit performance. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture4 (MOPP 4).

**STANDARDS:** The unit establishes an entry point and clears the building according to the unit standing operating procedures (SOPs), the order, and or the commander’s guidance. Unit enters, searches, and exits the building while maintaining all around security. The unit complies with the ROE, mission instructions, higher HQ order, and other special orders.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>PLAN</p> <p>*1. Unit leaders receive an OPORD or a FRAGO that requires the unit to enter and clear a building, and issue a warning order (WARNO) to the unit according to troop-leading procedures (TLPs) and unit SOPs. The WARNO must include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Location and tentative timeline for the operation, including movement times and the no later than (NLT) times for the mission execution.</li> <li>b. Tentative task-organization, identifying the decisive operation and shaping operation, location of attachments (support by fire, breach elements, clearing elements and interpreters).</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Guidance directing the unit to conduct rehearsals of assigned tasks to include breaching, searching, and clearing rooms. Guidance to start any initial movement; surveillance, and reconnaissance tasks; and define commander’s critical information requirements (CCIRs).</p> <p>d. Instructions to obtain marking devices for urban operations (according to the unit SOPs), urban breaching materials, and any other special equipment or additional supplies required for the mission.</p> <p>*2. Unit leaders conduct planning and make necessary coordination for the operation by taking the following actions:</p> <p>a. Conducting mission analysis focusing on the mission variables; taking advantage of maps, structural analysis, imagery, unmanned aircraft systems (UASs), and other available capabilities.</p> <p>b. Developing a tentative course of action, which supports the following actions:</p> <p>(1) Determines approach route, tentative support by fire (SBF) or overwatch positions, tentative primary and alternate entry points and plans type of breach.</p> <p>(2) Develops unit graphics and other control measures highlighting routes, support positions, and entry points to coordinate unit actions during clearance of the building.</p> <p>(3) Develops a plan to identify and control non-combatant occupants of the building, including integration of an interpreter in the clearing element.</p> <p>(4) Prepares a security plan for negotiations.</p> <p>(5) Develops contingency plans for contact with enemy forces, obstacles, and danger areas encountered during the clearing operation.</p> <p>c. Coordinating for required explosive ordnance disposal (EOD), military police (MP), civil affairs (CA), or interpreter assistance, as identified, during mission analysis.</p> <p>d. Coordinating with local forces, if required, by the ROE or higher commander’s intent.</p> <p>e. Coordinating for bartering assets, if required.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>f. Organizing the unit into the decisive and shaping elements, and identifying special teams (breach, search and control, EPW search, aid and litter teams).</p> <p>g. Conducting risk management to identify, assess, develop, and implement controls for hazards and to mitigate associated risks.</p> <p>*3. Unit leaders conduct a leader’s reconnaissance using all available resources (UASs, human and signal intelligence, Soldiers and optics) as required, based on mission variables of METT-TC.</p> <p>PREPARE</p> <p>*4. Unit leaders issue the FRAGO to all subordinate elements. The FRAGO includes: enemy situation, mission statement, concept of the operation, scheme of maneuver, tasks to subordinate units, coordinating instructions, graphics, timeline, resupply and CASEVAC plan, mission command, ROE and risk assessment.</p> <p>5. The unit conducts rehearsal, which at a minimum, rehearses Enter and Clear a Room.</p> <p>*6. Unit leaders issue any updates or adjustments to any FRAGOs, as needed, to address changes to the plan identified during the rehearsal.</p> <p>EXECUTE</p> <p>7. The unit conducts tactical movement to the building by taking the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Use assets and guides to aid navigation to objective area.</li> <li>b. Maintain element of surprise on approach to building.</li> <li>c. Breach, using appropriate method, any obstacles that it could not bypass.</li> <li>d. Unit leaders identify the target building and entry point.</li> <li>e. Identify and establish support by fire position that covers the movement of elements to the building and to cover breaching, if required.</li> </ul> <p>*8. Unit leaders select the method to enter the building (with or without the use of combat power) according to METT-TC, ROE, and commander guidance.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>9. The unit enters building without the use of combat power by using the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Gain access to the building through local authorities or interpreters.</li> </ul> <p>OR</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Gain access by knocking on the door and giving instructions directly to the inhabitants.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Proceed to step 14 if combat power is not being used to enter the building.</p> <p>10. The unit enters building by using combat power, which includes some of the following actions:</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Unit leaders must consider ROE, building structure and the possibility of the enemy being mixed with noncombatants during breaching the entry point and clearing rooms.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Selecting an entry point, which should include the following considerations: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Consider ROE and the affects the breach will have on the type and composition of the buildings.</li> <li>(2) Select an entry point that reduces vulnerability of Soldiers making initial entry.</li> <li>(3) Determine if the unit will conduct a top or bottom breach into the building.</li> <li>(4) Select a covered and concealed route to his entry point.</li> <li>(5) Decide if a mechanical breach is necessary.</li> <li>(6) Select method of breaching entry point: grenades, demolitions, artillery, tank fire, antiarmor weapons fire, vehicles or similar means.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Positioning support, breach and clearing elements.</li> </ul> <p>11. The unit conducts breach of entry point, which includes the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Support element provides suppressive fire.</li> <li>b. Employ smoke to obscure movement.</li> <li>c. Breach element clears entry point with an appropriate method (small arms, grenades, or shoulder-launched munitions) based on the structure and noncombatants.</li> </ul> <p>12. The clearing element enters the building to establish a foothold, which includes taking the following actions:</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>a. Moves to the entry point using cover and concealment.</p> <p>b. Enters building using one of the following methods:</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(1) Moves using cover and concealment to the entry point. Enter building without stopping outside entry point. Soldiers move quickly to assigned positions that allow them to completely dominate the foothold and eliminate all threats.</p> <p>OR</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(2) Establishes security outside entry point. Employ a hand grenade (fragmentation, concussion or stun grenade) into the entry point. Buddy teams move almost simultaneously into the entry point firing aimed bursts into their sectors engaging all threats or hostile targets to cover their entry. Take up positions of domination in the foothold.</p> <p>c. Ensures clearing teams maintain contact with the element and unit leaders using visual signals and FM communication to avoid masking fires.</p> <p>d. Ensures element leader reports to unit leader when the foothold is establish and secure.</p> <p>13. The unit conducts deliberate clearance of the building by taking the following actions:</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">a. Clearing elements scan their assigned areas during movement. (The scan area is in three dimensions).</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">b. All Soldiers check for trip wires, loopholes and mouseholes in the ceiling, walls, and floor.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">c. Unit executes battle drill, Enter and Clear a Room, to clear assigned rooms.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">d. Unit marks and secures cleared rooms according to the unit SOPs.</p> <p>14. The unit controls noncombatants, contraband, equipment, and secured items by taking the following actions:</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">a. Adhering to the ROE while engaging and controlling the inhabitants of the building, which could include the following actions:</p> <p style="padding-left: 80px;">(1) Instruct occupants on whether or not they should vacate the building.</p>		

**Chapter 2**

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(2) Inform occupants what they should do or not do during the search.</p> <p>(3) Informs occupants where they should assemble, if required.</p> <p>(4) Question occupants to determine information about the building: identity of building occupants; whereabouts of building occupants if they were not present; locations of storerooms, and whether there were any dogs in the building.</p> <p>b. Securing records location of and maintaining chain of custody for contraband or secured items.</p> <p>c. Using appropriate security measures if search element finds hidden personnel or prohibited items.</p> <p>Take the following actions:</p> <p>(1) Require personnel to identify themselves.</p> <p>(2) Secure individuals awaiting transfer of responsibility to civil police, military police, military intelligence, or civil affairs personnel.</p> <p>(3) Prepare detainee tags with circumstances of capture for delivery to designated detention authority according to the ROE and unit SOPs.</p> <p>(4) Inspect weapons and clear them or otherwise make them safe for transportation.</p> <p>(5) Record circumstances of discovery according to the unit SOPs.</p> <p>ASSESS</p> <p>15. Once the building is secured, the unit conducts a deliberate search of the building according to collective task “Conduct Site Exploitation, 17-2-9400,” if required.</p> <p>16. The unit consolidates and reorganizes as necessary.</p> <p>17. The unit continues operations as directed.</p> <p>* Indicates a leader task step.</p>		

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
071-326-0556	Clear a Building
071-440-0031	Employ Hand Grenades During an Urban Operation
071-030-0004	Engage Targets with an MK 19 Grenade Machine Gun
071-410-0010	Conduct a Leader’s Reconnaissance
071-326-0542	Enter a Building During an Urban Operation

071-313-3452	Zero a Caliber .50 M2 Machine Gun
071-025-0025	Zero an AN/PAQ-4-Series Aiming Light to an M240B Machine Gun
071-311-2130	Engage Targets with an M203 Grenade Launcher
071-705-0002	Operate an M68 Sight (Close Combat Optic)
071-010-0015	Engage Targets with an M249 Machine Gun Using an AN/PAQ-4-Series Aiming Light
071-311-2127	Load an M203 Grenade Launcher
071-311-2125	Maintain an M203 Grenade Launcher
071-025-0023	Mount an AN/PAQ-4-Series Aiming Light on an M240B Machine Gun
071-010-0002	Mount a Night Vision Sight, AN/PVS-4, on an M249 Machine Gun
071-100-0022	Zero an AN/PAS-13 Thermal Weapon Sight to an M16-Series Rifle or M4 – Series Carbine
071-004-0002	Perform a Function Check on an M9 Pistol
071-326-5502	Issue a Fragmentary Order
071-010-0006	Engage Targets with an M249 Machine Gun
071-326-0501	Move as a Member of a Fire Team
071-010-0010	Zero an AN/PAS-13 Thermal Weapon Sight to an M249 Machine Gun
071-022-0001	Maintain a Caliber .50 M2 Machine Gun
071-326-0541	Perform Exterior Movement Techniques During an Urban Operation
071-326-5503	Issue a Warning Order
071-100-0034	Mount a Night Vision Sight, AN/PVS-4 on M16 – Series Rifle/M4 – Series Carbine
071-025-0026	Engage Targets with an M240B Machine Gun Using an AN/PAQ-4-Series Aiming Light
071-100-0030	Engage Targets with an M16-Series Rifle/M4-Series Carbine
071-100-0033	Correct Malfunctions of an M16-Series Rifle/M4-Series Carbine
071-315-2351	Zero a Night Vision Sight, AN/PVS-4, to an M203 Grenade Launcher
071-010-0001	Zero a Night Vision Sight, AN/PVS-4, to an M249 Machine Gun
071-705-0001	Maintain an M68 Sight (Close Combat Optic)
071-010-0014	Zero an AN/PAQ-4-Series Aiming Light to an M249 Machine Gun
071-100-0031	Zero an M16 Series Rifle / M4-Series Carbine
071-702-0001	Operate the Infrared Illuminator AN/PEQ-2A

## Chapter 2

---

071-100-0041	Engage Targets with an M16-Series Rifle M4 Series Carbine Using an AN/PAQ-4-Series Aiming Light
071-100-0039	Mount an AN/PAQ-4-Series Aiming Light on an M16 – Series Rifle/M4 Series Carbine
071-100-0036	Zero a Night Vision Sight, AN/PVS-4 to M16-Series Rifle/M4-series Carbine
071-100-0032	Maintain an M16/M4-Series rifle with magazine and ammunition
071-025-0027	Mount an AN/PEQ-2A-Series Aiming Light on an M240B Machine Gun
071-315-2352	Engage Targets with an M203 Grenade Launcher Using a Night Vision Sight, AN/PVS-4
071-100-0037	Engage Targets with an M16-Series Rifle/M4-Series Carbine Using a Night Vision Sight, AN/PVS-4

### SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
07-2-5009	Conduct a Rehearsal (Platoon-Company)
07-2-5027	Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Platoon-Company)
07-2-9011	Conduct Tactical Movement in an Urban Area (Platoon-Company)
07-2-9051	Conduct a Cordon and Search (Platoon-Company)
17-2-9400	Conduct Site Exploitation (Platoon-Company)
19-3-3107	Process Detainee(s) at Point of Capture (POC)

**TASK:** Conduct Support by Fire (Platoon-Company) (07-2-3000)

(FM 3-21.10) (FM 3-21.8)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit conducts operations as part of a higher headquarters (HQ) and receives an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct a support by fire (SBF). All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture<sup>4</sup> (MOPP 4).

**STANDARDS:** The unit conducts the SBF according to standing operating procedures (SOPs), the order, and or higher commander’s guidance. The unit occupies SBF positions undetected and suppresses or destroys enemy elements that could affect accomplishment of the supported force’s mission. The unit maintains communications with the supported force.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>PLAN</p> <p>*1. Unit leaders gain and/or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREP), and other available information sources. Intelligence sources include company intelligence support team (CoIST), human intelligence (HUMINT), signal intelligence (SIGINT), and imagery intelligence (IMINT) to include unmanned aircraft systems (UASs) and unattended ground sensors (UGSs).</p> <p>*2. The unit leader receives an OPORD or FRAGO and issues a warning order (WARNO) normally containing at a minimum:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. The mission or nature of the operation.</li> <li>b. The time and place for issuing the OPORD.</li> <li>c. Units or elements participating in the operation.</li> <li>d. Specific tasks not addressed by unit SOPs.</li> <li>e. The timeline for the operation.</li> </ul> <p>*3. The unit leader confirms friendly and enemy situations. He takes the following actions:</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>a. Receives an updated report showing the location of forward and adjacent friendly elements, and the SBF.</p> <p>b. Receives an updated enemy situational template for added fratricide prevention and increased force protection, if applicable.</p> <p>c. Clarifies priority intelligence requirement (PIR) requirements.</p> <p>d. Confirms any changes to the higher HQ and unit task or purpose.</p> <p>e. Confirms any changes to the scheme of maneuver.</p> <p>*4. The unit leader plans using troop-leading procedures (TLPs). He takes the following actions:</p> <p>a. Conducts analysis based on factors of mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, civil considerations (METT-TC).</p> <p>b. Considers the enemy’s capabilities, likely courses of action (COAs), and specific weapons capabilities.</p> <p>c. Conducts a map reconnaissance. Takes the following actions:</p> <p>(1) Identifies tentative SBF positions (primary and alternate).</p> <p>(2) Identifies likely enemy avenues of approach (mounted and dismounted).</p> <p>(3) Identifies routes to and from SBF positions (primary and alternate).</p> <p>(4) Identifies tentative target reference points (TRPs).</p> <p>(5) Marks tentative dismount points on maps as appropriate.</p> <p>d. Plans the integration of direct and indirect fires according to higher HQ fire support plan.</p> <p>e. Conducts liaison with maneuver elements to integrate anti-fratricide measures.</p> <p>f. Plans primary and alternate triggers and/or signals for lifting or shifting direct and indirect fires.</p> <p>g. Plans forward observer (FO) positions so they can effectively adjust indirect fires.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>h. Develops control measures.</p> <p>i. Establishes sectors of observation and fire for each position.</p> <p>j. Establishes engagement priorities.</p> <p>k. Develops rules, signals, and methods of engagement.</p> <p>l. Develops criteria and signals for disengagement.</p> <p>m. Conducts coordination with maneuver force.</p> <p>He coordinates:</p> <p>(1) Control measures.</p> <p>(2) TRPs.</p> <p>(3) SBF position locations.</p> <p>n. Plans and coordinates sustainment.</p> <p>o. Plans to pre-position supplies, if necessary.</p> <p>p. Coordinates and synchronizes activities within each warfighting function.</p> <p>q. Organizes the unit as needed to accomplish the mission and/or compensate for combat losses.</p> <p>r. Designates the main effort and supporting effort.</p> <p>s. Addresses actions on chance contact with the enemy.</p> <p>PREPARE</p> <p>*5. The unit leader disseminates digital reports (if applicable), overlays, and other pertinent information to each element to keep them abreast of the situation.</p> <p>*6. The unit leader issues clear and concise tasking, orders and instructions to include ROE.</p> <p>7. The unit conducts a rehearsal.</p> <p>*8. The unit leader issues a FRAGO, as needed, to address changes to the plan identified during the rehearsal.</p> <p>*9. The unit leader or designated representative and reconnaissance element conducts the reconnaissance based on factors of METT-TC. He takes the following actions:</p> <p>a. Selects SBF positions that:</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(1) Ensure the SBF element can place effective fires within the constraints of the terrain, on the enemy flanks, and provide overwatch within the primary weapon range.</p> <p>(2) Provide adequate cover and concealment.</p> <p>b. Secures SBF positions.</p> <p>c. Confirms and or selects TRPs.</p> <p>d. Identifies the avenues of approach for mounted and dismounted enemy elements.</p> <p>e. Updates the enemy situation.</p> <p>f. Leaves security element at SBF positions.</p> <p>g. Returns to the unit position.</p> <p>*10. The unit leader adjusts the plan based on updated intelligence and reconnaissance effort.</p> <p>*11. The unit leader updates the enemy situation.</p> <p>*12. The unit leader disseminates updated digital reports (if applicable), overlays, and other pertinent information.</p> <p>*13. The unit leader coordinates and/or synchronizes actions of all elements.</p> <p>*14. The unit leader uses FRAGOs as needed to redirect actions of subordinate elements.</p> <p>EXECUTE</p> <p>15. The unit moves tactically to and occupies designated SBF positions. It takes the following actions:</p> <p>a. Uses cover and concealed routes to prevent the enemy force from effectively engaging the SBF element.</p> <p>b. Occupies the most advantageous terrain that allows the placement of accurate fires on the enemy.</p> <p>c. Maintains local security.</p> <p>d. Uses natural or man-made obstacles on the position.</p> <p>e. Verifies fire procedures and control measures.</p> <p>f. Emplaces weapon systems. Takes the following actions:</p> <p>(1) Emplaces weapon systems covering sectors of fire and observation and any other designated targets that increase flank shots on the enemy.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(2) Employs mortars to provide indirect fire support.</p> <p>g. Observes (continually) the maneuver force axis, route, sector, or direction of attack.</p> <p>h. Identifies known or suspected enemy positions that could engage the maneuver force.</p> <p>*16. The unit leader positions self so he can view and control the battle.</p> <p>17. The unit conducts overwatch as the situation dictates. It takes the following actions:</p> <p>a. Scans sectors of fire according to the SOPs or OPORD.</p> <p>b. Keeps maneuver force informed of the enemy situation and of any lapses in overwatch coverage.</p> <p>18. The unit employs direct fires. It takes the following actions:</p> <p>a. Acquires, suppresses, and/or destroys identified enemy elements using the appropriate weapon systems.</p> <p>b. Prevents the enemy from placing accurate fires against the protected force. Takes the following actions:</p> <p>(1) Maintains security to prevent the enemy from engaging the maneuver force.</p> <p>(2) Repositions as needed to maintain effective observation and/or fires on the enemy or to prevent the enemy from acquiring or destroying the maneuver force.</p> <p>(3) Employs dismounted Soldiers, if necessary.</p> <p>c. Lifts or shifts fires on order or by predetermined signal.</p> <p>d. Ceases fire on order or by predetermined signal.</p> <p>*19. The unit leader employs indirect fires to suppress, obscure, or destroy the enemy or to screen the movement of the maneuver force.</p> <p>ASSESS</p> <p>20. The unit fixes, suppresses, or destroys the enemy according to the OPORD.</p>		

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO-GO</b>
21. The unit consolidates and reorganizes as needed.		
22. The unit continues operations as directed.		
* indicates a leader task step.		

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
171-610-0001	Perform a Map Reconnaissance
061-283-6003	Adjust Indirect Fire
071-410-0010	Conduct a Leaders Reconnaissance
071-326-5503	Issue a Warning Order
071-600-0009	Coordinate with Supported Units
171-121-4045	Conduct Troop leading Procedures
071-326-5502	Issue a Fragmentary Order
071-030-0004	Engage Targets with an MK 19 Grenade Machine Gun
071-054-0004	Engage Targets with an M136 Launcher
071-314-0012	Engage Targets with the 25-mm Automatic Gun on a BFV
071-316-3006	Engage Targets with the TOW System on a BFV

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
07-2-1324	Conduct Tactical Movement (Platoon-Company)
07-2-1396	Employ Obstacles (Platoon-Company)
07-2-3027	Integrate Direct Fires (Platoon-Company)
07-2-3036	Integrate Indirect Fire Support (Platoon-Company)
07-2-5009	Conduct a Rehearsal (Platoon-Company)
07-2-5027	Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Platoon-Company)
07-2-5063	Conduct Composite Risk Management (Platoon-Company)
07-2-6063	Maintain Operations Security (Platoon-Company)
08-2-0003	Treat Casualties
08-2-0004	Evacuate Casualties

**SUPPORTING BATTLE/CREW DRILLS**

<b>Drill Number</b>	<b>Drill Title</b>
07-3-D9501	React to Contact (Visual, IED, Direct Fire [includes RPG])
07-3-D9504	React to Indirect Fire

**TASK:** Conduct an Air Assault (Platoon-Company) (07-2-1495)

(FM 3-21.10)

(FM 3-21.8)

(ATTP 3-18.12)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit is conducting operations as part of a higher headquarters (HQ) and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) that requires it to perform an air assault mission. The pickup zone (PZ) and landing zone (LZ) have been designated in the order. Higher HQ coordinates aviation assets and conducts indirect fire support planning. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective measure 4 (MOPP 4).

**STANDARDS:** The unit performs the air assault according to the standing operating procedures (SOPs), the order, and/or higher commander's guidance. Unit briefs members on loading, safety, and unloading procedures. The unit arrives at the PZ and loads as per the loading plan by the specified time. The unit establishes and maintains security in their designated area of the PZ. The unit dismounts at the LZ, establishes security, and moves to designated area.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>NOTE:</b> Air assault planning and coordination is normally conducted at battalion or higher HQ. The battalion is the lowest level that has sufficient personnel to plan, coordinate, and control an air assault operation.</p> <p>PLAN</p> <p>*1. Unit leaders gain and/or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources. Intelligence sources include company intelligence support team (CoIST), human intelligence (HUMINT), signal intelligence (SIGNIT), and imagery intelligence (IMINT) to include unmanned aircraft systems (UASs), and unattended ground sensors (UGSs).</p>		

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO-GO</b>
<p>*2. Unit leaders receive an OPORD or FRAGO and issue a warning order (WARNO) to the unit.</p> <p>*3. Unit leaders confirm friendly and enemy situations. They takes the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Receive an updated report showing the location of forward and adjacent friendly elements, if applicable.</li> <li>b. Receive an updated enemy situational template for added fratricide prevention and increased force protection, if applicable.</li> <li>c. Clarify priority intelligence requirement (PIR) requirements.</li> <li>d. Confirm any changes to the task organization and unit task or purpose.</li> <li>e. Confirm any changes to the scheme of maneuver.</li> </ul> <p>*4. Unit leaders or designated representatives attend the air mission briefing, if possible.</p> <p>*5. Unit leaders plan using troop-leading procedures. They takes the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conduct a map reconnaissance.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Identify pickup zone (PZ) and landing zone (LZ).</li> <li>(2) Identify tentative security positions, if required.</li> <li>(3) Identify likely enemy avenues of approach into the PZ and LZ.</li> <li>(4) Mark tentative dismount points on maps as appropriate.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Identify direct fire responsibilities.</li> <li>c. Consider the enemy’s capabilities, likely courses of action (COAs), and specific weapons capabilities.</li> <li>d. Address actions on chance contact with the enemy.</li> <li>e. Confirm procedures for calling for indirect fires.</li> <li>f. Select a straggler control point, if not assigned by higher HQ, for bumped personnel, if not provided by higher HQ.</li> <li>g. Coordinate to deconflict the fires of aircraft and troops on the LZ.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*6. Unit leaders disseminate reports, overlays, and other pertinent information to each element to keep them abreast of the situation.</p> <p>*7. Unit leaders organize the load and/or personnel based on the allowable cargo load as stated in the SOP, OPORD, and/or FRAGO. They take the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Designate chinks and chalk leaders.</li> <li>b. Ensure tactical integrity is maintained (keeps teams together on the same aircraft).</li> <li>c. Ensure self-sufficiency is maintained (keeps weapon systems [for example, machine guns, Javelins, and their crews] on the same aircraft with ammunition and components).</li> <li>d. Ensure key personnel and weapons are distributed between the aircraft.</li> <li>e. Ensure each aircraft is loaded so that dismounting personnel can react promptly and contribute to mission accomplishment.</li> </ul> <p>*8. Unit leaders or a designated representative ensure unit personnel are briefed on the air assault operation. They take the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Brief locations of LZ, PZ, and rendezvous points.</li> <li>b. Brief type of aircraft, if known.</li> <li>c. Brief allowable cargo load of aircraft.</li> <li>d. Brief priority of loading and bump plan.</li> <li>e. Ensure bumped personnel (if any) are told to report to the straggler control point.</li> <li>f. Brief contingency plan for downed aircraft (both for personnel on the aircraft and the remainder of the unit).</li> <li>G Brief landing plan that includes:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Explanation of how aircraft are landing on the LZ.</li> <li>(2) Aircraft off-load procedures.</li> </ul> </li> <li>h. Coordination of fires of aircraft and troops on the LZ.</li> </ul> <p>*9. Unit leaders issue clear and concise taskings, orders, and instructions to include ROE. PREPARE</p>		

**Chapter 2**

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>10. Unit conducts a rehearsal.            *11. Unit leaders issue FRAGOs, as needed, to address changes to the plan identified during the rehearsal.            *12. Unit leaders coordinate and/or synchronize actions of subordinate elements.            *13. Unit leaders use FRAGOs as needed to redirect actions of subordinate elements.            EXECUTE</p> <p>14. Unit moves to the LZ and prepares for loading according to the SOP. They take the following actions:                a. Secure their assigned portion of the PZ while waiting to load the aircraft.                b. Load at the time specified in the OPORD or FRAGO.                c. Leave security with vehicles as needed.                d. Enforce safety measures according to the SOP.</p> <p>15. Unit arrives and secures PZ according to the SOP or guidance. They take the following actions:                a. Establish security to complete LZ activities and prevent surprise by the enemy.                b. Establish blocking positions on all high speed or high threat avenues of approach into the LZ.                c. Repulse enemy attacks and or counterattacks.                d. Unit evacuates casualties on departing aircraft.                e. Arrive at the object area with sufficient combat power to perform the specified mission.            ASSESS</p> <p>16. Unit consolidates and reorganizes as needed.            17. Unit continues operations as directed.            * indicates a leader task step.</p>		

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
171-121-4045	Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures
071-326-5503	Issue a Warning Order
071-326-5505	Issue an Operation Order at the Company, Platoon, or Squad Level
071-326-5502	Issue a Fragmentary Order

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
07-2-1342	Conduct Tactical Movement (Platoon-Company)
07-2-5009	Conduct a Rehearsal (Platoon-Company)
07-2-5027	Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Platoon-Company)
07-2-5063	Conduct Composite Risk Management (Platoon-Company)
07-2-6063	Maintain Operations Security (Platoon-Company)
07-3-9013	Conduct Action on Contact
07-3-9017	Conduct Actions at Danger Areas
08-2-0004	Evacuate Casualties

**SUPPORTING BATTLE/CREW DRILLS**

<b>Drill Number</b>	<b>Drill Title</b>
17-3-D8008	React to an Obstacle
07-3-D9505	Break Contact
05-3-D0016	Conduct the 5 Cs

## Chapter 2

---

**TASK:** Conduct a Bypass (Platoon-Company) (07-2-9002)

(FM 3-21.10)

(FM 3-21.8)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit conducts operations as part of a higher headquarters (HQ) and receives an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to bypass an obstacle, position, or enemy force to maintain the momentum of advance at the location and time specified. The unit is ordered to avoid becoming decisively engaged. All necessary personnel, equipment, indirect fire, and close air support (CAS) are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit has received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and may also have specific mission instructions, such as a peace mandate, terms of reference, and a status of forces agreement (SOFA). Military and civilian, joint and multinational partners, and news media may be present in the operational environment (OE). Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture 4 (MOPP 4).

**STANDARDS:** The unit conducts the bypass according to the unit standing operating procedures (SOPs), the order, and/or higher commander's guidance. The unit conducts the bypass without being detected, without being delayed by obstacles, or without becoming decisively engaged by the enemy force. The unit complies with the ROE, mission instructions, higher HQ order, and other special orders. All communication and reporting is according to applicable SOPs.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
PLAN 1. The unit leader receives an OPORD or a fragmentary order (FRAGO) that requires the unit to conduct a bypass. He issues a warning order (WARNO) in enough time for element leaders to have maximum planning time. The WARNO must include: a. Tentative unit organization for the bypass. b. Location and tentative timeline for the bypass, including the no later than time for beginning the movement. c. Guidance directing the unit to conduct rehearsals; any initial movement; initiate reconnaissance tasks and commander's critical information requirements (CCIRs).		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*2. The unit leader develops a tentative plan according to troop-leading procedures (TLPs). He takes the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducts mission analysis, using company intelligence support team (CoIST), focusing on the mission given, enemy forces and their capabilities, terrain and weather effects, troops available, time available to execute the operation, and civil considerations (METT-TC); taking advantage of maps, imagery, unmanned aircraft systems (UASs), unattended ground sensors (UGSs), and other available capabilities.</li> <li>b. Develops a tentative course of action. Takes the following actions:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Identifies likely enemy avenues of approach.</li> <li>(2) Identifies bypass route.</li> <li>(3) Identifies tentative security and support by fire positions.</li> <li>(4) Marks tentative dismount points on maps, as appropriate.</li> </ul> </li> <li>c. Identifies direct fire responsibilities and requests indirect fire, CAS, and attack aviation support according to the higher HQ's intent.</li> <li>d. Organizes the unit as needed to accomplish the mission and or compensate for combat losses. Takes the following actions:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Designates a fixing force to maintain contact with the enemy and assist the remainder of the unit during the bypass.</li> <li>(2) Designates other elements of the unit, as needed.</li> </ul> </li> <li>e. Develops contingency plans for actions on contact with the enemy, casualty evacuation (CASEVAC), and crossing of danger areas as required</li> <li>f. Conducts composite risk management to identify, assess, develop, and implement controls for hazards and to mitigate associated risks. (Refer to Task 07-2-5063, Conduct Composite Risk Management [Platoon-Company].)</li> </ul> <p>PREPARE</p> <p>3. The unit prepares for the bypass. It takes the following actions:</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>a. Conducts rehearsals, if possible.                      b. Completes final inspections.</p> <p>*4. The leader supervises subordinate TLPs to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the unit leader’s intent.</p> <p>5. The unit issues FRAGOs as needed to address changes to the plan identified during TLPs and/or rehearsals.</p> <p>EXECUTE</p> <p>*6. The unit leader or designated representative conducts leader reconnaissance. He takes the following actions:</p> <p>a. Determines nature of enemy or obstacle contact, including size, location, composition, and other factors.                      b. Identifies bypass route that affords adequate cover and concealment and/or intervening distance, preventing the enemy from effectively obstructing and or engaging the unit.                      c. Plans additional security measures, such as employment of screening or obscuring smoke.                      d. Ensures bypass affording routes away from enemy positions, obstacles, and enemy engagement areas.                      e. Ensures that terrain along the bypass supports the maneuver of the unit and follow-on force.                      f. Adjusts the plan based on updated intelligence and reconnaissance effort.                      g. Disseminates updated reports, overlays, and other pertinent information.</p> <p>*7. The unit leader issues the OPORD and uses FRAGOs as needed to redirect actions of subordinate elements.</p> <p>8. The fixing element gains and maintains contact with the enemy. It:</p> <p>a. May not have to use direct fire.                      b. Reports enemy actions according to SOPs.</p> <p>9. The unit conducts tactical movement or maneuver along the route or axis. It takes the following actions:</p> <p>a. Uses appropriate movement techniques and formations.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>b. Maintains proper weapons orientation to ensure 360-degree security.</p> <p>c. Identifies and reacts to enemy forces along the route. Takes the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Executes appropriate drills.</li> <li>(2) Completes the following as needed: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Armed vehicles suppresses on the move.</li> <li>(b) Mounted element members remains mounted.</li> <li>(c) Calls for and adjusts indirect fire and smoke to screen movement past the enemy position.</li> <li>(d) Reports the size and the location of the enemy to the higher HQ commander, and the unit continue the mission.</li> </ul> </li> <li>d. Avoids detection and or delays, if possible.</li> <li>e. Avoids decisive engagement.</li> <li>f. Marks bypass according to the unit’s SOPs.</li> <li>g. Once the rest of the unit clears the enemy position or obstacle, the fixing element: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Hand the enemy over to a support force breaks contact and rejoins the unit, according to the OPORD.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>OR</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(2) Remains attached to the follow-on forces, if applicable.</li> </ul> <p>*10. The unit leader directs maneuvers, as needed, to prevent becoming decisively engaged according to the OPORD when the element cannot bypass an enemy forces. He takes the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Establishes a base of fire to suppress the enemy and prevent him from repositioning any part of his force. Takes the following actions: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Ensures vehicles seek covered positions and the mounted elements dismounts.</li> <li>(2) Suppresses the enemy using direct and indirect fires.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Employs or calls for smoke to facilitate the maneuver of the rest of the unit.</li> </ul> <p>*11. The unit leader reports to higher HQ completion of the delay.</p> <p>ASSESS</p>		

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO-GO</b>
12. The unit consolidates and reorganization as needed. (Refer to Task 07-2-5027, Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization [Platoon–Company].) 13. The unit continues operations as directed. * indicates a leader task step.		

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
171-121-4045	Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures
171-610-0001	Perform a Map Reconnaissance
071-326-5630	Conduct Movement Techniques by a Platoon
171-121-3009	Control Techniques of Movement
301-348-1050	Report Information of Potential Intelligence Value

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
07-2-1342	Conduct Tactical Movement (Platoon-Company)
07-2-3000	Conduct Support by Fire (Platoon-Company)
07-2-3027	Integrate Direct Fires (Platoon-Company)
07-2-3036	Integrate Indirect Fire Support (Platoon-Company)
07-2-5009	Conduct a Rehearsal (Platoon-Company)
07-2-5027	Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Platoon-Company)
07-2-9006	Conduct a Passage of Lines as the Passing Unit (Platoon-Company)
07-3-9013	Conduct Actions on Contact
07-3-9017	Conduct Actions at Danger Areas
08-2-0003	Treat Casualties
08-2-0004	Evacuate Casualties
44-3-3220	Perform Passive Air Defense Measures
44-3-3221	Perform Active Air Defense Measures

**SUPPORTING BATTLE/CREW DRILLS**

<b>Drill Number</b>	<b>Drill Title</b>
17-3-D8008	React to an Obstacle
17-3-D9509	Break Contact
05-3-D0016	Conduct the 5Cs

**TASK:** Breach an Obstacle (Platoon-Company) (17-2-3070)

(FM 3-34)

(FM 3-90.1)

**CONDITIONS:** During tactical operations, the unit encounters an obstacle that must be breached to complete the mission. Engineer support may or may not be available. The obstacle is under enemy observation and within range of enemy fires. The unit is equipped with countermine equipment and may or may not be supported by fire by another unit. Indirect fire and intelligence assets may be available to the unit. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture 4 (MOPP 4).

**STANDARDS:** The unit breaches the obstacle according to the unit standing operating procedures (SOPs), the order, and or higher commander’s guidance. The unit suppresses and obscures the defending enemy force and establishes security at the breach site. It reduces the obstacle, proofs, and marks lane(s). The unit establishes security on the far side of the obstacle, destroying or suppressing enemy forces that threaten friendly elements moving through the breach site.

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO-GO</b>
<p><b>PLAN</b></p> <p>*1. Unit leaders gain and/or maintain situational understanding (SU) using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources. Intelligence sources include company intelligence support team (CoIST), human intelligence (HUMINT), signal intelligence (SIGINT), and imagery intelligence (IMINT) to include unmanned aircraft systems (UASs), and unattended ground sensors (UGSs).</p> <p>*2. Unit leaders receive an operation order (OPORD) or a fragmentary order (FRAGO) directing unit to breach an obstacle. Unit leader issues a warning order (WARNO) to element leaders ensuring that subordinate leaders have sufficient time for their own planning and preparation needs. The WARNO must include:</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">a. Tentative unit organization for the breach.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>b. Location and tentative timeline for the breach, including movement times and no later than time (NLT) for execution.</p> <p>c. Guidance directing the unit to conduct rehearsals; initiate movement; initiate reconnaissance tasks and the commander’s critical information requirements (CCIRs).</p> <p>*3. Unit leaders plan the actions on the objective (breach), which include:</p> <p>a. Obtain all pertinent intelligence on the location, disposition, composition, and orientation of both the obstacle and the defending enemy.</p> <p>b. Determine the method of breaching, by defining the following:</p> <p>(1) Specify mechanical or manual breach by engineer platoon.</p> <p>(2) Specify breach with mine plow and/or roller tanks.</p> <p>(3) Specify manual breach by unit.</p> <p>a. Identify lane requirements.</p> <p>b. Identify location of enemy direct fire weapon systems.</p> <p>c. Determine ability of enemy to interfere with the breach.</p> <p>d. Plan for indirect fires to obscure and suppress the defending enemy.</p> <p>e. Designate elements as support, breach, and assault forces.</p> <p>PREPARE</p> <p>4. Support force selects and conducts tactical movement to support by fire (SBF) position, which entails the following actions:</p> <p>a. Selects covered and concealed routes to the SBF position.</p> <p>b. Calls for and adjust indirect fires to suppress the enemy, allowing the occupation of the SBF position.</p> <p>c. Conducts tactical movement and fire and movement, as needed.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. Selects SBF position that provides adequate security and fields of fire and observation, allowing the unit to suppress enemy elements.</p> <p>e. SBF element occupies positions according to the mission variables; mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops available, time available and civil considerations (METT-TC).</p> <p>f. Positions indirect fire observer or fire support officer (FO or FSO) to employ indirect fires on the enemy.</p> <p>EXECUTE</p> <p>5. Support force provides SBF for the breach force by taking the following actions:</p> <p>a. Suppressing and/or destroying suspected and known enemy locations with direct and indirect fires to protect the breach and assault force.</p> <p>b. Calling for and adjusting smoke to obscure the enemy and/or to screen the movement of friendly forces.</p> <p>c. Preventing enemy forces from placing effective fires on breach or assault forces.</p> <p>d. Maintaining flank security and repositions to alternate SBF positions, as necessary, to maintain accurate fires on the enemy and/or to prevent the enemy from placing effective fires on support force.</p> <p>e. Sending updated SITREPs to the unit leaders, breach force, and assault force, as needed.</p> <p>6. The breach force moves to and secures the breach site, and takes the following actions:</p> <p>a. Conducts tactical movement or fire and movement along covered and concealed routes to the breach site, preventing the enemy from placing effective fires on the breach force.</p> <p>b. Secures the near side of the obstacle.</p> <p>c. Sends updated SITREPs to the unit leaders, as needed.</p> <p>7. The breach force reduces the obstacle with engineer support, which includes the following actions:</p> <p>a. Move to breach site using covered and concealed routes.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>b. Engineer leader selects means of breaching the obstacle.</p> <p>c. Breach the obstacle and opens lane(s) for one-way traffic.</p> <p>d. Proof the lanes.</p> <p>e. Mark the lanes, to include entrance funnel markers, entrance markers, left handrail markers, and exit markers.</p> <p>f. Report the location of the entrance and exit points.</p> <p>g. Reports method(s) of marking the lanes.</p> <p>h. Send SITREPs to unit leader, updating the friendly and enemy situations.</p> <p>8. The breach force reduces the obstacle with mine plows/rollers, and takes the following actions:</p> <p>i. Conducts near side security of the obstacle to prevent enemy elements from interfering with breaching operations.</p> <p>j. Conducts manual breach using grappling hooks, wire cutters, and demolitions, improving the lane to allow vehicles to pass.</p> <p>k. Proofs lane with available assets.</p> <p>l. Marks the lane according to unit SOPs.</p> <p>m. Sends SITREPs to the unit leader, updating the friendly and enemy situations.</p> <p>n. Moves through the breach to establish a base of fire and provide far side security, preventing enemy forces from employing fires against the assault force.</p> <p>8. The assault force executes the assault by taking the following actions:</p> <p>a. Establishes near side security, suppressing enemy elements that could interfere with breaching operations.</p> <p>b. Searches for bypass of the obstacle or determines breach point.</p> <p>c. Reduces and proofs lane(s) with plow and roller tanks.</p> <p>d. Marks the lane, to include entrance funnel markers, entrance markers, left hand rail markers, and exit markers.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>e. Maneuvers to the far side of the obstacle and establishes base of fire for the assault force, suppressing enemy elements that could fire on elements moving through or exiting the lane.</p> <p>f. Sends SITREPs to unit leader, updating the friendly and enemy situation.</p> <p>9. The breach force reduces the obstacle using a manual breach, and takes the following actions:</p> <p>a. Reacts to contact, repositions and calls for supporting fires, as necessary.</p> <p>b. Conducts near side security of the obstacle to prevent enemy elements from interfering with breaching operations.</p> <p>c. Conducts manual breach using grappling hooks, wire cutters, and demolitions, improving the lane to allow vehicles to pass.</p> <p>d. Proofs lane with available assets.</p> <p>e. Marks the lane according to the unit SOPs.</p> <p>f. Sends SITREPs to the unit leader, updating the friendly and enemy situations.</p> <p>g. Moves through the breach to establish a base of fire and provide far side security, preventing enemy forces from employing fires against the assault force.</p> <p>10. The assault force executes the assault by taking the following actions:</p> <p>a. Maneuvers through the lane(s).</p> <p>b. Assaults to destroy enemy elements that threaten elements moving through the breach site.</p> <p>c. Establishes a base of fire, suppressing any enemy elements to protect the maneuver of the remainder of the unit.</p> <p>d. Sends SITREPs to unit leader, as necessary, to update the friendly and enemy situations.</p> <p>11. The unit completes the breach and continues the mission. It takes the following actions:</p> <p>a. Maneuvers quickly through the cleared lane(s).</p> <p>b. Deploys according to the OPORD/FRAGO.</p>		

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO-GO</b>
c. Continues the mission according to the OPORD/FRAGO. <b>ASSESS</b> *12. The leader sends updated SITREPs to the higher unit commander, as needed. 13. The unit consolidates and reorganizes as needed. 14. The unit continues operations as directed. *indicates a leader task step.		

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
171-194-0050	Plan Breaching of Obstacles
171-121-4051	Prepare a Situation Report (SITREP)
171-194-0051	Conduct Breaching of Obstacles
171-620-0090	Conduct an Assault at Company-Troop level

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
07-2-1342	Conduct Tactical Movement (Platoon-Company)
07-2-3000	Conduct Support by Fire (Platoon-Company)
07-2-3027	Integrate Direct Fires (Platoon-Company)
07-2-5009	Conduct a Rehearsal (Platoon-Company)
07-2-5027	Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Platoon-Company)
07-3-9013	Conduct Action on Contact
08-2-0003	Treat Casualties
08-2-0004	Evacuate Casualties
17-3-4012	Reconnoiter an Obstacle/Restriction

**SUPPORTING BATTLE/CREW DRILLS**

<b>Drill Number</b>	<b>Drill Title</b>
07-3-D9412	Breach of a Mined Wire Obstacle
17-3-D8008	React to an Obstacle

**TASK:** Conduct a Defense (Company-Platoon) (07-2-9003.P)

(FM 3-21.10)

(FM 3-21.8)

(FM 3-90.1)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit conducts operations as part of a higher headquarters (HQ) and receives an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to defend at the location and time specified. The defense may be conducted utilizing the techniques of sector, battle positions, strong point, or perimeter defense. Time is available for a deliberate occupation of defensive positions. All necessary personnel, equipment, indirect fire, and close air support (CAS) are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit receives guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and may also have specific mission instructions, such as a peace mandate, terms of reference, and a status-of-forces agreement (SOFA). Military and civilian, joint and multinational partners, and news media may be present in the operational environment (OE). Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture 4 (MOPP 4).

**STANDARDS:** The unit defends according to the standing operating procedures (SOPs), the order, and/or higher commander’s guidance. The unit occupies designated defensive positions, covers designated portion of the engagement area (EA) or sector of fire, and maintains security. The unit destroys or defeats the enemy force within the assigned area. The unit complies with the ROE, mission instructions, higher HQ orders, and other special orders.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>PLAN</p> <p>*1. Unit leaders receive an operation order (OPORD) or a fragmentary order (FRAGO) directing the unit to conduct a defense. They take the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conduct an initial assessment using the elements of mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC).</li> <li>b. Develop a planning and preparation timeline for the defense.</li> </ul> <p>2. Unit leaders issue a warning order (WARNO) to element leaders ensuring that subordinate leaders have sufficient time for their own planning and preparation needs. The WARNO must include:</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>a. Type of defense.</p> <p>b. Tentative unit organization for the defense.</p> <p>c. Tentative location of defensive positions.</p> <p>d. Tentative timeline for the operation, including tentative movement times and the no later than defend time.</p> <p>e. Guidance on movement; initial surveillance and reconnaissance tasks and responsibility for the commander’s critical information requirements (CCIRs).</p> <p>*3. Unit leaders develop a tentative plan according to troop-leading procedures (TLPs). (Refer to Task 07-2-5081, Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures [Platoon-Company] for more information.) They take the following actions:</p> <p>a. Conduct mission analysis by using the company intelligence support team (CoIST) focusing on METT-TC; taking advantage of maps, imagery, unmanned aircraft systems (UASs), unattended ground sensors (UGSs), and other available capabilities.</p> <p>b. Develop a course of action. Take the following actions:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Identify the most likely enemy avenues of approach.</li> <li>(2) Identify the enemy scheme of maneuver using intelligence products.</li> <li>(3) Determine where to kill the enemy.</li> <li>(4) Plan for emplacement and integration of obstacles and direct and indirect fire weapon systems.</li> <li>(5) Plan for reconnaissance and rehearsal of actions in the EA.</li> </ol> <p>c. Develop a defensive plan. Take the following actions:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Identify a tentative EA.</li> <li>(2) Develop an initial unit fire plan.</li> <li>(3) Identify existing and supporting manmade obstacles to force the enemy into the EA.</li> <li>(4) Identify tentative primary, alternate, and supplemental fighting positions.</li> <li>(5) Identify tentative observation post (OP) and sensor positions.</li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(6) Integrate indirect fires, CAS, and attack aviation according to the higher HQ fire support plan.</p> <p>(7) Integrate smoke and obscuration.</p> <p>(8) Develop casualty evacuation plan.</p> <p>(9) Identify tentative dismount/remount points (as required).</p> <p>(10) Designate fire control measures.</p> <p>(11) Develop disengagement criteria.</p> <p>(12) Organize the unit as needed to accomplish the mission identifying the decisive, shaping, and supporting efforts for all phases of the defense.</p> <p>(13) Finalize positions and obstacle locations.</p> <p>(14) Complete the plan.</p> <p>d. Conduct composite risk management to identify, assess, develop, and implement controls for hazards and to mitigate associated risks. (Refer to Task 07-2-5063, Conduct Composite Risk Management [Platoon-Company] for more information.)</p> <p>*4. Unit leaders issue the OPORD and use FRAGOs as needed to redirect actions of subordinate elements.</p> <p>PREPARE</p> <p>5. The unit starts movement to a tactical assembly area or designated area short of the defensive positions.</p> <p>*6. Unit leaders and the reconnaissance element conduct the final reconnaissance (based on factors of METT-TC). They take the following actions:</p> <p>a. Pinpoint the defensive positions.</p> <p>b. Position security elements.</p> <p>c. Determine and confirm the EA.</p> <p>d. Drive or walk the EA to confirm the selected positions and establish target reference points (TRPs).</p> <p>e. Ensure positions are free of enemy, mines, and obstacles.</p> <p>f. Select primary, alternate, supplementary, and subsequent fighting positions (mounted and dismounted) to achieve the desired effect for each EA.</p> <p>g. Designate the hide positions for each battle position.</p> <p>h. Confirm location(s) of obstacles.</p> <p>i. Assign the elements AOs and OP locations. (OPs should have wire communications, if available.)</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>j. Designate the location for the command post (CP), early warning systems, and the chemical alarm systems (if assigned).</li> <li>k. Identify dead space between elements and determined how best to cover the dead space.</li> <li>l. Identify weapon systems positions so the required number of weapons, vehicles (as applicable), and elements can effectively cover each EA and avenues of approach.</li> <li>m. Set engagement priorities for each direct fire weapon system.</li> <li>n. Plan for the fire control techniques to allow the unit to focus and redistribute fires into the EA.</li> <li>o. Select covered and concealed routes between primary, alternate, and supplementary defensive positions.</li> <li>p. Confirm tentative dismount/remount points (as applicable).</li> <li>q. Verify and update intelligence information.</li> <li>r. Leave a surveillance team to observe the defensive positions, if required.</li> <li>s. Return to the unit location.</li> </ul> <p>*7. Unit leaders adjust the plan based on updated intelligence and reconnaissance effort.</p> <p>*8. Unit leaders update the enemy situation.</p> <p>*9. Unit leaders disseminate updated reports, overlays, and other pertinent information.</p> <p>*10. Unit leaders or designated representatives conduct initial defense coordination with adjacent unit, focusing on the following requirements:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Locations of Ops and patrols.</li> <li>b. Communication information.</li> <li>c. Unit positions including locations of mission command nodes.</li> <li>d. Routes to be used during occupation and repositioning.</li> <li>e. Overlapping fires (to ensure that direct fire responsibility is clearly defined and dead space is covered).</li> <li>f. TRPs.</li> <li>g. Indirect fire information.</li> <li>h. Air defense considerations, if applicable.</li> <li>i. Sustainment considerations.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*11. Unit leaders use FRAGOs as needed to redirect actions of subordinate elements.</p> <p>*12. The unit moves tactically to assigned defensive areas and prepares to occupy battle positions (BP). It takes the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Uses covered and concealed routes.</li> <li>b. Enforces camouflage, noise, light, and litter discipline.</li> <li>c. Maintains security during movement.</li> </ul> <p>*13. The unit establishes the defense. It takes the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Posts local security.</li> <li>b. Positions key weapons systems, vehicles, and other assets to effectively cover each EA.</li> <li>c. Conducts reconnaissance of the EA from the enemy's perspective (if possible).</li> <li>d. Assigns sectors of fire, engagement priorities, and other fire control measures.</li> <li>e. Ensures the unit is tied in with the unit on its right and left.</li> <li>f. Designates final protective fires (FPF) and final protective lines (FPL).</li> <li>g. Clears fields of fire.</li> <li>h. Prepares range cards/sector sketches.</li> <li>i. Constructs primary defensive positions according to unit SOP and/or as directed.</li> <li>j. Establishes communications.</li> <li>k. Emplaces claymore mines and protective obstacles as required. Takes the following actions:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Identifies dead space and requirements to refine the location of the obstacle group and fire control measures.</li> <li>(2) Ensures obstacles are covered by direct or indirect fire and under friendly observation.</li> <li>(3) Ensures obstacles are concealed from enemy observation as much as possible.</li> <li>(4) Ensures obstacles are employed in depth.</li> <li>(5) Ensures obstacles are tied in with existing obstacles, if possible.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>l. Maintains security (to include Ops, hasty perimeter, or security patrols).</p> <p>*14. Unit leaders consolidate sketch cards and finalize the unit fire plan.</p> <p>*15. The unit conducts the following rehearsals of the defense as time permits:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Leadership rehearsal of the engagement using brief back format.</li> <li>b. Full force rehearsal of the engagement.</li> <li>c. Rehearsal of displacement to alternate and supplemental positions and the withdrawal plan.</li> </ul> <p>*16. As time permits, unit leaders direct elements to take additional steps to improve positions according to unit SOPs. They take the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Add overhead cover.</li> <li>b. Emplace camouflage, alarms, and decoys.</li> <li>c. Establish alternate and supplemental positions according to unit SOP and/or as directed.</li> <li>d. Stockpile ammunition, food, and water.</li> <li>e. Establish detainee, wounded-in-action (WIA), and killed-in-action (KIA) collection points.</li> <li>f. Complete vehicle maintenance and prepared pre-fire checks.</li> <li>g. Establish a sleep and rest plan.</li> </ul> <p>17. Unit leaders or designated representatives conduct final coordination with adjacent units, focusing on the following requirements:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Unit positions.</li> <li>b. Locations of Ops and patrols.</li> <li>c. Alternate, supplementary, and subsequent BPs.</li> <li>d. Sectors of fire and observation overlap.</li> <li>e. Obstacles (location and type).</li> </ul> <p>*18. Unit leaders adjust readiness condition (REDCON) status according to METT-TC factors, OPORD or FRAGO, and unit SOPs using Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2), field manuals (FMs), or other tactical means. They take the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assess readiness requirements based on tactical situation and METT-TC factors.</li> <li>b. Direct unit to assume appropriate REDCON level.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*19. Unit leaders coordinate and/or synchronize actions of subordinate elements.</p> <p>*20. Unit leaders use FRAGOs as needed to redirect actions of subordinate elements.</p> <p>EXECUTE</p> <p>21. The unit executes the defense. It takes the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Scans AOs.</li> <li>b. Engages enemy forces. Takes the following actions: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Uses indirect fires and CAS until enemy reaches direct fire trigger line.</li> <li>(2) Initiates direct fire engagements on command/or when the engagement criteria is met.</li> <li>(3) Destroys or forces enemy withdraw from EA.</li> <li>(4) Reports contact to higher commander and adjacent units.</li> <li>(5) Employs reserve and/or counterattack according to METT-TC.</li> </ul> </li> <li>c. Displaces as required or when displacement criteria is met.</li> </ul> <p>ASSESS</p> <p>22. The unit consolidates and reorganizes as needed. (Refer to Task 07-2-5027, Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization [Platoon-Company] for more information.)</p> <p>23. The unit continues operations as directed.</p> <p>*indicates a leader task step.</p>		

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
171-121-4045	Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures
171-610-0001	Perform a Map Reconnaissance
071-326-5770	Prepare a Platoon Sector Sketch
171-121-3009	Control Techniques of Movement
061-283-6003	Adjust Indirect Fire
301-348-1050	Report Information of Potential Intelligence Value
071-326-5703	Construct Individual Fighting Positions

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
07-2-1342	Conduct Tactical Movement (Platoon-Company)
07-2-1387	Employ a Reserve Force (Platoon-Company)
07-2-1396	Employ Obstacles (Platoon-Company)
07-2-3027	Integrate Direct Fires (Platoon-Company)
07-2-3036	Integrate Indirect Fire Support (Platoon-Company)
07-2-5009	Conduct a Rehearsal (Platoon-Company)
07-2-5027	Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Platoon-Company)
07-2-6045	Employ Camouflage, Concealment, and Deception Techniques (Platoon-Company)
07-2-9007	Conduct a Passage of Lines as the Stationary Unit (Platoon-Company)
08-2-0003	Treat Casualties
08-2-0004	Evacuate Casualties
44-3-3220	Perform Passive Air Defense Measures
44-3-3221	Perform Active Air Defense Measures

**SUPPORTING BATTLE/CREW DRILLS**

<b>Drill Number</b>	<b>Drill Title</b>
07-3-D9501	React to Contact (Visual IED, Direct Fire [includes RPG])
17-3-D8004	React to Air Attack

**TASK:**Conduct a Delay (Platoon-Company) (07-2-9004)

(FM 3-21.10) (FM 3-21.8)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit conducts operations as part of a higher headquarters (HQ) and receives an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to delay the enemy for a specific time at the location and time specified. The enemy can attack by air, indirect fire, and ground (mounted or dismounted). All necessary personnel, equipment, indirect fire and close air support (CAS) are available. The unit communicates with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit receives guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and may also receive specific mission instructions, such as a peace mandate, terms of reference, and a status-of-forces agreement (SOFA). Military and civilian, joint and multinational partners, and news media may be present in the operational environment (OE). Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture 4 (MOPP 4).

**STANDARDS:** The unit conducts the delay according to the unit standing operating procedures (SOPs), the order, and or higher commander’s guidance. The unit occupies initial delay positions, forces the enemy to slow their advance, complies with all control measures, and disengages from the enemy as directed. The unit does not engage decisively. The unit complies with the ROE, mission instructions, higher HQ orders, and other special orders. All communication and reporting is according to applicable SOP.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>PLAN</p> <p>*1. Unit leaders receive an OPORD or a fragmentary order FRAGO directing the unit to conduct a delay. The unit commander issues a warning order (WARNO) to element leaders ensuring that subordinate leaders have sufficient time for their own planning and preparation needs. The WARNO must include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Type of delay to conduct (in sector or forward of a line or position for a specified time).</li> <li>b. Tentative unit organization for the delay including:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Main body.</li> <li>(2) Security force.</li> <li>(3) Reserve.</li> </ul> </li> <li>c. Tentative timeline for the operation including tentative movement times.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. Guidance directing the unit to conduct rehearsals and any initial movement, and initiate reconnaissance tasks and commander’s critical information requirements (CCIRs).</p> <p>*2. Unit leaders begin developing a tentative plan according to the troop-leading procedures (TLP). (Refer to Task 07-2-5081, Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures [Platoon-Company] for more information.)They take the following actions:</p> <p>a. Conduct mission analysis using the company intelligence support team (CoIST) focusing on the mission given, enemy forces and their capabilities, terrain and weather effects, troops available, time available to execute the operation, and civil considerations (METT-TC); taking advantage of maps, imagery, unmanned aircraft systems (UASs), unattended ground sensors (UGSs), and other available capabilities.</p> <p>b. Develop a tentative plan. Take the following actions:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Identify initial and subsequent delay positions.</li> <li>(2) Identify general routes between delay positions.</li> <li>(3) Identify tentative, security, support by fire, and assault positions, if required.</li> <li>(4) Identify likely enemy avenues of approach.</li> <li>(5) Plan obstacles to slow the enemy advance.</li> <li>(6) Establish the disengagement criteria.</li> <li>(7) Identify evacuation routes.</li> <li>(8) Identify key terrain.</li> <li>(9) Mark tentative dismount points on maps as appropriate.</li> <li>(10) Plan and coordinate indirect fire support and/or close air support, if available and incorporates the higher HQ fire plan.</li> <li>(11) Develop control measures to include unit-level phase lines and graphics.</li> <li>(12) Develop contingency plans for possible offensive operations.</li> <li>(13) Organize the unit as needed to accomplish the mission and/or compensate for combat losses.</li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(14) Conduct composite risk management to identify, assess, develop, and implement controls for hazards and to mitigate associated risks. (Refer to Task 07-2-5063, Conduct Composite Risk Management [Platoon-Company] for more information.)</p> <p>*3. Unit leaders issue the OPORD and use FRAGOs as needed to redirect actions of subordinate elements.</p> <p>PREPARE</p> <p>4. The unit prepares for the delay. It takes the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducts a reconnaissance and marks general routes between delay positions including:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Selects security, support, and assault positions, if required.</li> <li>(2) Leaves security at initial delay positions.</li> <li>(3) Verifies and update intelligence information.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Constructs a series of alternate fighting positions.</li> <li>c. Stockpiles supplies, fuel, and ammunition in designated positions as required.</li> <li>d. Constructs obstacles as needed.</li> <li>e. Evacuates all unneeded personnel, supplies, and equipment.</li> <li>f. Prepares to destroy supplies and equipment that cannot be evacuated.</li> <li>g. Conducts rehearsal during daylight and periods of reduced visibility, if possible.</li> <li>h. Supervises subordinate TLPs to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the unit commander's intent.</li> </ul> <p>EXECUTE</p> <p>5. The unit executes the delay. It takes the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Occupies initial delay positions according to the OPORD and/or guidance from higher HQ.</li> <li>b. Forces the enemy to slow their advance by forcing them to change their movement formations and speed by employing:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Ambushes.</li> <li>(2) Snipers.</li> <li>(3) Obstacles and minefields.</li> <li>(4) Direct and indirect fires.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

**Chapter 2**

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Complies with all control measures and time constraints specified in the OPORD.</p> <p>6. The unit does not become decisively engaged. It takes the following actions:</p> <p>a. Disengages from the enemy and withdraws to new positions before enemy assault.</p> <p>b. Continues delaying action until one of the following is met:</p> <p>(1) The delaying force conducts a rearward passage of lines through a defending force.</p> <p>(2) The delaying force reaches defensible terrain and transitions to the defense.</p> <p>(3) The advancing enemy force reaches a culminating point and can no longer continue to advance.</p> <p>(4) The delaying force goes on the offensive.</p> <p>*7. Unit leaders report to higher HQ the completion of the delay.</p> <p>ASSESS</p> <p>8. The unit consolidates and reorganizes as needed. (Refer to Task 07-2-5027, Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization [Platoon–Company] for more information.)</p> <p>9. The unit continues operations as directed.</p> <p>*indicates a leader task step.</p>		

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
171-121-4045	Conduct Troop Leading Procedures
171-610-0001	Perform a Map Reconnaissance
071-326-5630	Conduct Movement Techniques by a Platoon
171-121-3009	Control Techniques of Movement
061-283-6003	Adjust Indirect Fire
301-348-1050	Report Information of Potential Intelligence Value

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
07-2-1252	Conduct an Antiarmor Ambush (Platoon-Company)
07-2-1342	Conduct Tactical Movement (Platoon-Company)
07-2-1396	Employ Obstacles (Platoon-Company)
07-2-3018	Employ Snipers (Platoon-Company)
07-2-3036	Integrate Indirect Fire Support (Platoon-Company)

07-2-5027	Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Platoon-Company)
07-2-9006	Conduct a Passage of Lines as the Passing Unit (Platoon-Company)
07-2-9009	Conduct a Withdrawal (Platoon-Company)
07-2-9010	Conduct an Ambush (Platoon-Company)
07-3-1072	Conduct a Disengagement
07-3-9013	Conduct an Action on Contact
07-3-9017	Conduct Actions at Danger Areas
08-2-0003	Treat Casualties
08-2-0004	Evacuate Casualties
43-2-4522	Destroy Supplies and Equipment

**SUPPORTING BATTLE/CREW DRILLS**

<b>Drill Number</b>	<b>Drill Title</b>
07-3-D9501	React to Contact (Visual, IED, Direct Fire [includes RPG])
07-3-D9504	React to Indirect Fire

**TASK:** Conduct a Withdrawal (Platoon-Company) (07-2-9009)

(FM 3-21.10)

(FM 3-21.8)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit conducts operations as part of a higher headquarters (HQ) and receives an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) directing it to disengage and withdraw immediately from the enemy and reposition for another mission. The withdrawal may or may not be conducted under enemy pressure and is unassisted. Indirect fire and close air support (CAS) are available. The unit may be directed to designate a detachment left in contact. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has established communications with required units at all echelons. The unit has received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture 4 (MOPP 4).

**STANDARDS:** The unit conducts the withdrawal according to standing operating procedures (SOPs), the order, and or the higher commander’s guidance. The unit disengages and moves to a designated location where the enemy cannot observe or engage it with direct fire. The unit designates a detachment left in contact. The unit complies with the ROE, mission instructions, higher HQ orders, and other special orders.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>PLAN</p> <p>*1. The unit leader receives an OPORD or a FRAGO that requires the unit to conduct a withdrawal. It issues a warning order (WARNO) to the unit according to troop-leading procedures (TLPs) and unit SOPs. The WARNO must include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Tentative timeline for the operation, including the latest time for beginning the withdrawal.</li> <li>b. Tentative unit organization for the operation.</li> <li>c. Guidance directing the unit to conduct rehearsals; any initial movement; initiate surveillance, reconnaissance tasks, and commander’s critical information requirements (CCIRs).</li> </ul> <p>*2. The unit leader begins developing a tentative plan according to TLPs. He takes the following actions:</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>a. Gains and/or maintains situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources. Intelligence sources include company intelligence support team (CoIST), human intelligence (HUMINT), signal intelligence (SIGINT), and imagery intelligence (IMINT) to include unmanned aircraft systems (UASs) and unattended ground sensors (UGSs).</p> <p>b. Develops a tentative course of action. Takes the following actions:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Indicates the method of disengagement based on enemy pressure (not under pressure or under enemy pressure).</li> <li>(2) Determines when and where the withdrawal will start.</li> <li>(3) Identifies possible key terrain and routes based on the higher unit's graphics and his map.</li> <li>(4) Determines the locations for assembly areas or battle positions (BPs) to which the unit will withdraw.</li> <li>(5) Plans deception activities.</li> <li>(6) Conducts fire planning for direct fires, indirect fires and CAS along the withdrawal route to aid in the withdrawal.</li> <li>(7) Develops criteria for special instructions on employment of special weapons element (for example, mortars if available).</li> <li>(8) Designates the withdrawal task organization into security force, main body, and reserve, as needed, to accomplish the mission and or compensate for combat losses. Takes the following actions:               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Designates an element of the security force as the detachment left in contact (DLIC).</li> <li>(b) Determines the size, composition, mission, and leader of the DLIC.</li> <li>(c) Designates a quartering party.</li> </ol> </li> </ol> <p>c. Determines the withdrawal and linkup plan for the detachment left in contact.</p> <p>d. Plans to withdraw under limited visibility conditions, if possible.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>e. Develops contingency plans for chance contact, medical evacuation (MEDEVAC), and other events identified during mission analysis.</p> <p>f. Coordinates with adjacent units as necessary.</p> <p>g. Conducts risk management to identify, assess, develop, and implement controls for hazards and to mitigate associated risks.</p> <p>3. The quartering party takes the following actions:</p> <p>a. Conducts reconnaissance of positions to which unit will withdraw.</p> <p>b. Selects subordinate element positions and/or sectors.</p> <p>c. Selects observation post (OP) positions for unit.</p> <p>d. Provides guides as needed.</p> <p>e. Coordinates with the unit/element through which the unit will conduct a rearward passage of lines, if required.</p> <p><b>PREPARE</b></p> <p>*4. The unit leader issues the OPORD and uses FRAGOs as needed to redirect actions of subordinate elements.</p> <p>5. The unit conducts a rehearsal if withdrawal is not under enemy pressure. It walks the routes during daylight and limited visibility based on the factors of mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC).</p> <p><b>EXECUTE</b></p> <p>6. The unit withdraws under enemy pressure. It takes the following actions:</p> <p>a. Uses DLIC to cover the withdrawal of the main body by deception and maneuver. The unit leader uses one of the following methods to designate the DLIC:</p> <p>(1) Designates one element to execute the DLIC mission.</p> <p>(2) Constitutes DLIC using ad hoc elements of the main body with a designated leader.</p> <p>c. Moves main body from their positions to their designated assembly area/BP while covered by the DLIC, and then to the unit AA upon order or at the designated time (after all equipment and personnel are accounted for).</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. Moves unit to the higher HQ assembly area upon order or at the designated time (after all equipment and personnel were accounted for).</p> <p>7. The unit withdraws not under enemy pressure. It takes the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Moves unneeded vehicles and/or equipment to the rear before the withdrawal started.</li> <li>b. Moves special weapon systems where they can provide support to cover the withdrawal.</li> <li>c. Withdraws least heavily engaged element first.</li> </ul> <p>Takes the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Ensures the DLIC disengages and moves into a position where it can best overwatch the disengagement of the more heavily engaged elements.</li> <li>(2) Ensures the main body continues maneuvering to the rear and provides overwatch in turn.</li> </ul> <p>8. The unit completes the withdrawal.</p> <p>ASSESS</p> <p>9. The unit consolidates and reorganizes as needed.</p> <p>10. The unit continues operations as directed.</p> <p>* indicates a leader task step.</p>		

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
071-326-5606	Select an Overwatch Position
071-410-0016	Conduct Occupation of an Overwatch Position
071-410-0010	Conduct a Leader’s Reconnaissance
071-410-0020	Plan for Use of Supporting Fires

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
07-2-1324	Conduct Tactical Movement (Platoon-Company)
07-2-1387	Employ a Reserve Force (Platoon-Company)
07-2-3018	Employ Snipers (Platoon-Company)
07-2-3036	Integrate Indirect Fire Support (Platoon-Company)
07-2-9006	Conduct a Passage of Lines as the Passing Unit (Platoon-Company)
07-2-9014	Occupy an Assembly Area (Platoon-Company)
07-3-9013	Conduct Action on Contact
07-3-9016	Establish an Observation Post

## Chapter 2

---

07-3-9017	Conduct Actions at Danger Areas
08-2-0003	Treat Casualties
08-2-0004	Evacuate Casualties
44-3-3221	Perform Active Air Defense Measures

### SUPPORTING BATTLE/CREW DRILLS

<b>Drill Number</b>	<b>Drill Title</b>
07-3-D9501	React to Contact (Visual, IED, Direct Fire [includes RPG])
07-3-D9504	React to Indirect Fires
07-3-D9505	Break Contact

**TASK:** Conduct a Relief in Place (Platoon-Company) (07-2-9012)

(FM 3-21.10) (FM 3-21.8)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit conducts operations as part of a higher headquarters (HQ) and receives an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct a relief in place at the location and time specified. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. Indirect fire and close air support (CAS) are available. The unit has established communications with required units at all echelons. The unit has received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture 4 (MOPP 4).

**STANDARDS:** The unit conducts the relief in place according to the unit standing operating procedures (SOPs), the order, and/or higher commander’s guidance. The unit conducts the necessary coordination, moves tactically to the designated contact point, occupies relieved unit’s positions, and assumes responsibility for the fight without allowing the enemy an advantage. The unit complies with the ROE, mission instructions, higher HQ order, and other special orders.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>PLAN</p> <p>*1. Unit leaders receive an OPORD or a FRAGO that requires the unit to conduct a relief in place (RIP), and issue a warning order (WARNO) to the unit according to troop-leading procedures (TLPs) and unit SOPs. The WARNO must include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Location and tentative timeline for the operation, including the no later than time for completion of the RIP.</li> <li>b. Tentative unit organization for the RIP.</li> <li>c. Guidance directing the unit to conduct rehearsals; any initial movement; initiate surveillance, and reconnaissance tasks and commander’s critical information requirements (CCIRs).</li> </ul> <p>*2. Unit leaders develop a tentative plan according to TLPs. They take the following actions:</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>a. Conduct mission analysis company intelligence support team (CoIST), focusing on the mission given, enemy forces and their capabilities, terrain and weather effects, troops available, time available to execute the operation, and civil considerations (METT-TC); taking advantage of maps, imagery, unmanned aircraft systems (UASs), unattended ground sensors (UGSs), and other available capabilities.</p> <p>b. Unit leaders make contact with the unit leaders of the counterpart unit, and develop a tentative course of action, which includes:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Identify contact points if not identified in the higher OPORD.</li> <li>(2) Identify routes to and from contact points.</li> <li>(3) Mark tentative dismount points on maps, as appropriate.</li> <li>(4) Identify direct fire responsibilities and integrating indirect fire support and or close air support, if necessary.</li> <li>(5) Plan for increased supply consumption during RIP.</li> <li>(6) Develop contingencies for chance contact with the enemy; identify command and control during the RIP.</li> <li>(7) Conduct risk management to identify, assess, develop, and implement controls for hazards to mitigate associated risks, when possible.</li> </ol> <p>*3. Unit leaders, or designated representatives, coordinate and/or exchange information with the relieved unit according to SOPs, the OPORD or FRAGO, and/or commander's guidance by coordinating and/or exchanging the following:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Update enemy situation.</li> <li>b. Outgoing unit's tactical plan, to include: graphics, fire plans, and individual vehicles' and/or sector sketches.</li> <li>c. Location of vehicle and/or individual fighting positions (to include: hide, alternate, and supplementary positions).</li> <li>d. Fire support coordination, including: indirect fire plans and the time of relief for supporting artillery and mortar units.</li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>e. Types of weapon systems being replaced.</p> <p>f. Location and disposition of obstacles and the time responsibility will be transferred.</p> <p>g. Counterattack plans.</p> <p>h. Plans for other tasks the elements may have been tasked to perform.</p> <p>i. Supplies and equipment to be transferred.</p> <p>j. Movement control, route priority, and placement of guides.</p> <p>k. Sustainment support and evacuation, if necessary, for disabled vehicles.</p> <p>l. Time, sequence, and method of relief (relief of one unit at a time, simultaneous relief of units, and relief by occupation in depth or occupation of adjacent positions.</p> <p>m. Communications data information, which includes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Frequencies.</li> <li>(2) Filters for digital equipment.</li> <li>(3) Signals.</li> <li>(4) Challenge and password.</li> </ul> <p>n. Battle hand over line (BHL) procedures for artillery.</p> <p>*4. Unit leaders or designated representatives and reconnaissance elements, conduct the reconnaissance based on METT-TC, which includes the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reconnoiter routes into and out of the position.</li> <li>b. Reconnoiter any assembly areas to be used.</li> <li>c. Reconnoiter logistics release points (LRPs).</li> <li>d. Reconnoiter primary, alternate, and supplementary positions.</li> <li>e. Reconnoiter obstacles.</li> <li>f. Reconnoiter patrol routes (primary and alternate) and observation post (Ops) locations, when possible.</li> <li>g. Verify and update priority intelligence requirements.</li> <li>h. Post security, if required.</li> </ul> <p>PREPARE</p> <p>*5. Unit leaders issue the OPORD and use FRAGOs, as needed, to redirect actions of subordinate elements.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>6. The unit conducts rehearsal, at a minimum, executing a leader’s rehearsal in back brief format. EXECUTE</p> <p>7. The unit executes the RIP, while taking the following actions:</p> <p>a. Maintains operations security (OPSEC) by:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Changing frequencies on all element radios to the frequencies of the relieved unit.</li> <li>(2) Maintaining radio listening silence (if specified in the OPORD and or FRAGO).</li> <li>(3) Adhering to noise, light, and litter discipline.</li> </ol> <p>b. Initiates movement by:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Moving to predetermined contact points and meets guides from the relieved unit.</li> <li>(2) Establishing a command post (CP) with relieved unit CP.</li> <li>(3) Moving into hide positions and coordinating any final information.</li> </ol> <p>c. Occupies, as needed, preliminary positions in preparation for conducting the relief. The following procedures apply:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Occupy positions behind the unit to be relieved, as determined in the coordination or as specified in the OPORD.</li> <li>(2) Report to the higher HQ commander when occupation of preliminary position is complete and the element is prepared to conduct the relief.</li> </ol> <p>d. Completes preparations and coordination with the relieving or relieved unit. Takes the following actions:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Updates the enemy situation.</li> <li>(2) Completes transfer of sector sketches and fire plans.</li> <li>(3) Completes transfer of obstacle target folders and hasty protective minefield forms.</li> </ol> <p>e. Conducts the relief and transfer equipment and supplies, as required. This includes:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Conducts battle hand over with relieving unit and accepting responsibility.</li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(2) As applicable, guides leading the relieving unit to specified positions in the determined sequence of relief, using covered and concealed routes and maintaining 360-degree security.</p> <p>ASSESS</p> <p>*8. Unit leaders, or designated representatives, report completion of the relief to the higher HQ commander.</p> <p>9. The unit continues operations as directed.</p> <p>* indicates a leader task step.</p>		

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
071-410-0010	Conduct a Leader’s Reconnaissance
071-326-5502	Issue a Fragmentary Order
071-331-0815	Practice Noise, Light, and Litter Discipline
071-326-5505	Issue an Operation Order at the Company, Platoon, or Squad Level
061-284-3040	Engage Targets with Close Air Support
061-283-6003	Adjust Indirect Fire

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
07-2-1342	Conduct Tactical Movement (Platoon-Company)
07-2-5036	Conduct Coordination (Platoon-Company)
07-2-6063	Maintain Operations Security (Platoon-Company)
07-2-9005	Conduct a Linkup (Platoon-Company)
07-2-9006	Conduct a Passage of Lines as the Passing Unit (Platoon-Company)
07-2-3036	Integrate Indirect Fire Support (Platoon-Company)

**SUPPORTING BATTLE/CREW DRILLS**

<b>Drill Number</b>	<b>Drill Title</b>
05-3-D0016	Conduct the 5Cs
07-3-D9501	React to Contact (Visual, IED, Direct Fire [includes RPG])

## Chapter 2

---

**TASK:** Conduct a Screen (Platoon-Company) (17-2-9225)

(FM 3-20.971)

(FM 3-20.96)

(FM 3-20.98)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit conducts operations as part of a higher headquarters (HQ) and receives an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) directing it to conduct a stationary or moving screen mission for a larger force. The order designates the general trace of the screen, the duration of the screen, and the time it must be established. Indirect fire is available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture 4 (MOPP 4).

**STANDARDS:** The unit conducts the screen according to unit standing operating procedures (SOPs), the order, and/or higher commander's guidance. The unit does not allow any enemy ground element to pass through the screen undetected and unreported. The unit maintains continuous surveillance of enemy reconnaissance and main body avenues of approach, detects all enemy activity in the area of operations (AOs), provides early warning of enemy approach to the screened force, and destroys or repels enemy reconnaissance elements within its capabilities until displacement criteria are met as specified in the operations order. The unit complies with the ROE.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
PLAN *1. Unit leaders gain and/or maintain situational understanding (SU) using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources. Intelligence sources include company intelligence support team (CoIST), human intelligence (HUMINT), signal intelligence (SIGINT), and imagery intelligence (IMINT) to include unmanned aircraft systems (UASs), and unattended ground sensors (UGSs). *2. Unit leaders receive an OPORD or FRAGO and issue a warning order (WARNO) to include at a minimum:		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. The mission or nature of the screen.</li> <li>b. The time and place for issuing the OPORD.</li> <li>c. Units or elements participating in the screen.</li> <li>d. Specific tasks not addressed by unit SOPs.</li> <li>e. The timeline for the screen.</li> </ul> <p>*3. The leader conducts troop-leading procedures (TLPs) to develop the order.</p> <p>*4. Unit leaders coordinate with the protected force leader. They take the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinate any reinforcements necessary to accomplish the screen mission in depth.</li> <li>b. Coordinate the general trace of the screen and effective time, if appropriate.</li> <li>c. Reaffirm area of responsibility (AOR).</li> <li>d. Determine the interval to be maintained between the unit and the protected force.</li> <li>e. Determine battle/target handover criteria and graphic control measures.</li> <li>f. Coordinate special requirements or constraints, such as observing named areas of interest (NAIs) or target areas of interest (TAIs).</li> </ul> <p>*5. Unit leaders plan the screen mission. They take the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Coordinate with higher HQ and adjacent units to obtain required intelligence products, and initiating a terrain analysis using maps and other terrain products.</li> <li>b. Conduct a map reconnaissance. Take the following actions:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Identify screen trace, orientation, lateral and rear boundaries, and NAIs.</li> <li>(2) Identify enemy avenues of approach and possible objectives for enemy reconnaissance and infiltrating elements.</li> <li>(3) Identify and mark tentative control measures and dismount and remount points.</li> <li>(4) Select routes or sectors to facilitate rearward displacement.</li> <li>(5) Disseminate data to subordinate units via digital and/or conventional means.</li> </ul> </li> <li>c. Integrate the fundamentals of security. Take the following actions:</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(1) Orient on the force, area, or facility to be protected.</p> <p>(2) Perform continuous reconnaissance.</p> <p>(3) Provide early and accurate warning.</p> <p>(4) Provide reaction time and maneuver space.</p> <p>(5) Maintain enemy contact.</p> <p>d. Conduct mission analysis. Take the following actions:</p> <p>(1) Identify the limits of the AO and area of interest (AOI).</p> <p>(2) Determine location, orientation, type, depth, and composition of obstacles.</p> <p>(3) Evaluate the enemy by considering the following information:</p> <p>(4) Determine tempo of the operation.</p> <p>(5) Identify the focus of the operation.</p> <p>(6) Determine enemy courses of action (ECOAs).</p> <p>e. Develop the surveillance and reconnaissance plan. Take the following actions:</p> <p>(1) Develop a plan that answers the commander's critical information requirements (CCIRs)/priority intelligence requirements (PIRs) and accomplish his intent.</p> <p>(2) Integrate air reconnaissance assets and UASs, if available, forward of the screen line.</p> <p>f. Organize the unit to best accomplish the mission. Take the following actions:</p> <p>(1) Assign units to observe, identify, and report enemy actions.</p> <p>(2) Coordinate for additional combat and sustainment augmentation, as required.</p> <p>(3) Employ attached sustainment/protection elements, such as engineers, to provide support to maneuver elements.</p> <p>(4) Designate security forces to cover likely enemy approaches.</p> <p>g. Plan for air and ground integration.</p> <p>h. Plan for positioning of leadership elements.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>i. Designate which unit has responsibility for the area between the screening force rear boundary and the screened force AO.</p> <p>j. Designate graphic control measures, including:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Initial screen line that is forward of the general trace but within range of supporting indirect fire.</li> <li>(2) Subsequent screen lines as phase lines.</li> <li>(3) Passage of lines graphics and infiltration lanes.</li> <li>(4) Left and right limits of the screen as well as a phase line for the rear boundary.</li> <li>(5) Sectors, areas, or boundaries for subordinate elements.</li> <li>(6) Rally points, linkup points, contact points, and checkpoints.</li> <li>(7) General locations for observation posts (OP) enabling observation of the avenues of approach into the sector.</li> </ol> <p>k. Designate NAIs and assign observation.</p> <p>l. Annotate unit graphic control measures using higher HQ FRAGO overlay as a guide, and disseminating graphics to subordinate units.</p> <p>m. Establish engagement criteria according to:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Size of enemy force.</li> <li>(2) Type of enemy unit.</li> <li>(3) Activity of enemy unit.</li> </ol> <p>n. Integrate a fire support plan.</p> <p>o. Integrate the engineer obstacle plan.</p> <p>p. Plan sustainment and take the following actions:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Integrate the movement and positioning of sustainment assets into the scheme of maneuver.</li> <li>(2) Integrate refueling, rearming, and resupply operations into the scheme of maneuver.</li> <li>(3) Ensure adequate support to reconnaissance elements.</li> <li>(4) Plan supply routes to each element's location.</li> <li>(5) Plan immediate support to high-risk operations.</li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(6) Plan and coordinate casualty evacuation assets.</p> <p>(7) Establish drop points for movement of key sustainment assets.</p> <p>(8) Plan on-order control measures, logistics release points (LRP), unit maintenance collection points (UMCP), and ambulance exchange points (AXPs).</p> <p>q. Develop contingency plan for chance contact with the enemy prior to reaching initial screen line.</p> <p>r. Plan movement of units performing front, rear, and/or flank screen.</p> <p>s. Plan limited visibility surveillance requirements.</p> <p>t. Plan successive bounds, alternate bounds by units, or continuous marching method of movement.</p> <p>u. Coordinate for passage of lines, if necessary.</p> <p>v. Ensure the plan is understood by all subordinate leaders.</p> <p>PREPARE</p> <p>*6. Unit leaders publish the order and distribute all paragraphs, annexes, and supporting overlays throughout the unit.</p> <p>*7. Unit leaders give the order to execute screen.</p> <p>EXECUTE</p> <p>8. The unit moves to screen line by conducting one of the three primary methods:</p> <p>a. Zone reconnaissance to answer the intelligence requirement.</p> <p>b. Infiltration to avoid enemy forces and establishing the screen.</p> <p>c. A tactical road march to the screen line.</p> <p>9. The unit occupies the screen. It takes the following actions:</p> <p>a. Establishes the stationary screen:</p> <p>(1) Determines changes to task organization and unit AOs after zone reconnaissance based on tasks and the factors of the mission given, enemy forces and their capabilities, terrain and weather effects, troops available, time available to execute the operation, and civil considerations (METT-TC).</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(2) Determines primary screen orientation for the unit and primary Ops.</p> <p>(3) Identifies engagement criteria.</p> <p>(4) Identifies method of displacement to subsequent screen lines while maintaining contact with the enemy.</p> <p>(5) Identifies initial locations for attached maneuver forces that provides flexible response against enemy reconnaissance throughout the unit AO if applicable.</p> <p>(6) Identifies positions that allow use of Long-Range Advanced Scout Surveillance System (LRAS3) to assist in observation and provides overwatch, if needed.</p> <p>(7) Determines requirements for short- and long-duration surveillance of NAIs.</p> <p>(8) Determines patrol requirements between or in support of Ops.</p> <p>b. Conducts reconnaissance that uses cueing, mixing, and redundancy to integrate unit and other assets into the security effort to gain and maintain contact throughout the depth of the AO. This should include taking the following actions:</p> <p>(1) Positions Ops in depth and focused on NAIs.</p> <p>(2) Employs UASs and aviation assets to reconnoiter routes, infiltration lanes, or key and restricted terrain forward or to the flanks of the unit AO.</p> <p>(3) Orients other surveillance and reconnaissance assets on NAIs located on avenues of approach, routes forward, or the flanks of the unit screen line.</p> <p>(4) Emplaces ground sensors on flank avenues of approach or routes leading into the unit AO.</p> <p>(5) Employs chemical, biological, radiological, and nuclear (CBRN) reconnaissance teams to reconnoiter template attacks and bypasses.</p> <p>Takes the following actions:</p> <p>(a.) Synchronizes target acquisition tasks with security and reconnaissance tasks</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(b.) Synchronizes fires to suppress or destroy enemy elements or high-value targets (HVTs).</p> <p>(c.) Establishes locations and criteria for RHO and target handover.</p> <p>(d.) Specifies graphic control measures that support the concept of the operation.</p> <p>(e.) Establishes moving screen. Takes the following actions:</p> <p>(1) Uses control measures to facilitate orientation of direction of movement and orientation of screen.</p> <p>(2) Repositions to stay oriented on the force it is screening. Takes the following actions:</p> <p>(a.) Maintains continuous surveillance of unit AO. Takes the following actions:</p> <p>(b.) Uses continuous marching when speed is required and contact is not likely.</p> <p>(c.) Uses bounding by section or Ops, alternately or successively, when security is desired and contact is likely.</p> <p>(3) Conducts coordination with supporting air elements, as applicable.</p> <p>10. Acquires threat reconnaissance elements and destroys, if required, according to order. Takes the following actions:</p> <p>a. Coordinates with reconnaissance and surveillance assets and/or air elements, as applicable, to gain contact with enemy reconnaissance forward of the initial screen line and/or in restrictive terrain.</p> <p>b. Directs Ops and patrols to initially focus on reconnaissance avenues of approach as required.</p> <p>c. Uses indirect fires to impede and/or harass the threat according to fire support plan.</p> <p>e. Conducts counter reconnaissance to destroy, defeat, or repel all threat reconnaissance elements within capabilities and in accordance with engagement criteria.</p> <p>11. The unit gains contact with threat main body. It takes the following actions:</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>a. Coordinates with reconnaissance and surveillance assets and/or air elements, as applicable, to gain and assist in maintaining contact with threat main body.</p> <p>b. Reorients Ops and patrols to focus on most likely avenues of approach and/or NAIs.</p> <p>c. Accepts reconnaissance handover/battle handover/target handover from reconnaissance and surveillance assets and/or air elements, as applicable.</p> <p>d. Acquires targets and executes indirect fires according to the fire support plan.</p> <p>e. Continues operations as directed.</p> <p>12. The unit displaces to the subsequent screen line. It takes the following actions:</p> <p>a. Requests permission to displace.</p> <p>b. Directs Ops facing most immediate threat to displace first.</p> <p>c. Continues to adjust indirect fires.</p> <p>d. Maintains contact with advancing threat elements.</p> <p>e. Conducts reconnaissance handover/battle handover/target handover with other elements according to order and/or unit SOPs.</p> <p>f. Reports to higher HQ, as applicable, when set on the subsequent line.</p> <p>g. Keeps higher HQ informed throughout the operation.</p> <p>13. The unit completes the screen.</p> <p>ASSESS</p> <p>14. Unit leader maintains situational understanding and control conduct of the screen.</p> <p>a. Direct elements to move, on order, to successive screen lines.</p> <p>b. Use FRAGOs and graphic control measures to direct the moves.</p> <p>c. Direct elements to report when they occupy new screen lines or Ops.</p> <p>15. The unit consolidates and reorganizes as needed.</p> <p>16. The unit continues operations as directed.</p> <p>*indicates a leader task step.</p>		

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
061-284-3040	Engage Targets with Close Air Support
171-620-0011	Conduct Zone-Area Reconnaissance at Company-Troop Level
171-123-4001	Prepare a Platoon Fire Plan
171-620-0061	Conduct a Screen at Company-Troop Level
171-620-0016	Conduct Route Reconnaissance at Company-Troop Level
171-620-0019	Plan Fire Support at Company-Troop Level
171-121-4051	Prepare a Situation Report (SITREP)
171-121-4046	Direct Emplacement and Activation of Early Warning Systems
171-121-4004	Conduct a Screening Mission

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
07-3-9013	Conduct Action on Contact
17-2-4017	Conduct Target Acquisition (Platoon-Company)
17-2-9225	Conduct a Screen (Platoon-Company)
17-6-9225	Conduct a Screen (Battalion-Brigade)
17-3-2605	Conduct a Defense
07-2-5081	Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures (Platoon-Company)

**SUPPORTING BATTLE/CREW DRILLS**

<b>Drill Number</b>	<b>Drill Title</b>
07-3-D9504	React to Indirect Fire
05-3-D0016	Conduct the 5 Cs

**TASK:**Conduct Route Reconnaissance (Platoon-Company) (17-2-4000)  
 (FM 3-20.971) (FM 3-20.96)

**CONDITIONS:** During tactical operations, the unit receives an order directing it to conduct a route reconnaissance. The operations order specifies the focus, tempo, and engagement criteria for reconnaissance. Communications have been established, and information is being passed according to the unit standing operations procedures (SOPs). The unit has received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE). Coalition partners, civilians, government agencies, nongovernmental organizations, and the international media may be present in the area. Maneuver and sustainment assets may be available to the unit. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture 4 (MOPP 4).

**STANDARDS:** The unit conducts reconnaissance according to the commander’s intent to gain and report detailed, timely information about specified route(s), lateral routes within the area of operations (AOs), and terrain to either side of the route(s) that the enemy/adversary could use to influence movement along that route. The information provided answered the commander’s critical information requirements (CCIRs). The information was transmitted to elements using the communications system that allowed timely decisions by the commander and his higher headquarters (HQ).

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>PLAN</p> <p>*1. Unit leaders gain and/or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources. Intelligence sources include company intelligence support team (CoIST) human intelligence (HUMINT), signal intelligence (SIGINT), and imagery intelligence (IMINT) to include unmanned aircraft systems (UASs) and unattended ground sensors (UGSs).</p> <p>*2. The unit leader receives the mission from higher and issues a warning order (WARNO) normally containing at a minimum.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. The mission or nature of the operation.</li> <li>b. The time and place for issuing the OPORD.</li> </ul>		

**Chapter 2**

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Units or elements participating in the operation.</p> <p>d. Specific tasks not addressed by unit SOP.</p> <p>e. The timeline for the operation.</p> <p>*3. The unit leader verifies higher HQ information requirements, CCIRs, and priority intelligence requirement (PIR) and develops a visualization of higher commander’s plan.</p> <p>4. Unit leadership conducts troop-leading procedures to develop the order.</p> <p>PREPARE</p> <p>*5. The unit leader issues orders addressing the following:</p> <p>a. Orientation to include line of departure (LD), boundaries, start point (SP), routes, release point (RP), and limit of advance (LOA).</p> <p>b. Enemy situation to include likely threat weapon systems’ capability to affect the route.</p> <p>c. Pattern analysis of previous and most recent enemy activities and incidents along the planned route.</p> <p>d. Civilian situation to include as applicable—</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Unconventional forces to include militia and paramilitary forces.</li> <li>(2) Organized criminal factions and activities.</li> <li>(3) Factions, key leaders, locations, compositions, and dispositions of known friendly, neutrals, and threats.</li> <li>(4) Dislocated civilians.</li> <li>(5) Needs of society.</li> </ol> <p>e. Terrain to include:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Observation and fields of fire.</li> <li>(2) Avenues of approach.</li> <li>(3) Key and decisive terrain.</li> <li>(4) Obstacles.</li> <li>(5) Cover and concealment.</li> </ol> <p>f. Weather effects on the condition and capabilities of soldiers and weapon systems, including trafficability, visibility, and munitions performance.</p> <p>g. Higher commander’s intent to include focus for reconnaissance.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>h. Location, disposition, and missions of friendly forces in area.</p> <p>i. Unit leader’s intent that includes as a minimum—</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Purpose of reconnaissance in relation to the higher mission.</li> <li>(2) Conditions that represent the desired end state for reconnaissance in respect to enemy, terrain, and civil considerations.</li> </ol> <p>j. Concept of the operation that describes as a minimum.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Focus and tempo for reconnaissance.</li> <li>(2) Elements to reconnoiter and/or classify the route(s), or portions of the route(s) based on enemy/adversary, number of obstructions, terrain, and time available.</li> <li>(3) Elements to conduct zone reconnaissance to the flanks of the route(s), provide security, and/or follow and support.</li> <li>(4) Actions in urban areas.</li> <li>(5) Actions on contact.</li> <li>(6) Requirements for HUMINT along route(s).</li> <li>(7) Graphic control measures support concept of operation.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Phase lines, contact points, checkpoints, and as required.</li> <li>(b) Lateral boundaries 2 to 5 kms to either side of the route(s) to define AO.</li> </ol> </li> <li>(8) Priorities of fire and use of indirect fires.</li> <li>(9) Integration of additional assets into reconnaissance effort:               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Tactical UAS reconnoiters key/restrictive terrain forward or to flanks.</li> <li>(b) Engineers assist with the classification of routes, bridges, overpasses, underpasses, culverts, tunnels, ford sites, and as needed, conduct any required breaches once breach sites have been secured by the combat elements.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(c) Ground surveillance assets (ground surveillance radar [GSR], remotely monitored battlefield sensor systems) as needed.</p> <p>(d) Chemical, biological, radiological, and nuclear (CBRN) element reconnoiters for contamination and bypasses.</p> <p>(10) CCIRs.</p> <p>(11) Reconnaissance handover criteria.</p> <p>(12) Engagement criteria.</p> <p>(a) Size of enemy force.</p> <p>(b) Type of enemy unit.</p> <p>I Activity of enemy unit.</p> <p>(13) Bypass criteria.</p> <p>(14) Coordination with higher HQ reaction force.</p> <p>(15) Coordination tasks with flank units and other forces.</p> <p>(16) ROE.</p> <p>(17) Likely follow-on mission and transition instructions.</p> <p>j. Priorities and description of support operations.</p> <p>(1) Casualty evacuation (CASEVAC) or medical evacuation (MEDEVAC).</p> <p>(2) Emergency resupply.</p> <p>(3) Vehicle recovery and maintenance.</p> <p>k. Movement of commander.</p> <p>l. Unit leadership moves to maintain communications with higher headquarters and subordinates.</p> <p>6. Prior to departure, unit coordinates time and location for departure, composition, and route(s) for the reconnaissance with all units in AO and on flanks.</p> <p>EXECUTE</p> <p>7. Unit accomplishes the following tasks according to the reconnaissance focus or unless otherwise directed:</p> <p>a. Reconnoiter and determine trafficability of the route.</p> <p>(1) Type of route:</p> <p>(a) Highway.</p> <p>(b) Road.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(c) Street.</li> <li>(d) Trail.</li> <li>(e) Cross-country.</li> <li>(2) Classification of the route, checking for height, width, and weight restrictions to determine the appropriate class.</li> <li>(3) Seasonal limitations of the route.</li> <li>(4) Rate of movement the route will support.</li> <li>(5) Location and type of any critical points.</li> <li>b. Find, report, and clear (within capabilities) any enemy elements that can influence movement along the route according to engagement criteria.</li> <li>c. Reconnoiter routes approaching and inside urban areas.</li> <li>d. Reconnoiter lateral routes.</li> <li>e. Inspect and assess bridges.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Establish security around bridge.</li> <li>(2) Inspect the bridge, looking for weather damage, structural damage, and/or possible threat/adversary-emplaced demolitions.</li> <li>(3) As a minimum, conduct a hasty classification of the bridge.</li> <li>(4) Submit a bridge report (BRIDGEREP) to higher. Report includes the following:                   <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Type and location. (For long tunnels, report both entrance and exit locations.)</li> <li>(b) Overall length.</li> <li>(c) Width of roadway.</li> <li>(d) Height restrictions.</li> <li>(e) Length and number of spans.</li> <li>(f) Computed classification.</li> <li>(g) Bypass locations.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>f. Locate fords or crossings sites near all bridges on the route.</li> <li>g. Inspect and assess overpasses, underpasses, and culverts.</li> <li>h. Reconnoiter defiles.</li> <li>i. Locate mines, obstacles, and barriers.</li> <li>j. Locate bypasses around built-up areas, obstacles, and contaminated areas.</li> </ul>		

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO-GO</b>
k. Determine the type and volume of traffic on the route. l. Update CCIRs. <b>ASSESS</b> 8. Commander adjusts reconnaissance tempo as required during operations. a. Actions on contact. b. To answer the CCIRs and/or specific SIRs. c. To acquire high-payoff targets (HPTs). 9. Unit consolidates and reorganizes as needed. 10. Unit continues operations as directed. *indicates a leader task step.		

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
052-196-3065	Prepare a Route Reconnaissance Overlay
171-121-4050	Evaluate a Bridge
171-121-4062	Issue an Oral Operation Order/Fragmentary Order

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-2-3091	React to a Possible Improvised Explosive Device (IED), Vehicle Borne IED, Suicide VBIED or Person Borne IED (Unclassified/ For Official Use Only) (U//FOUO)
05-2-3092	Prepare for a Suspected Vehicle-Borne Improvised Explosive Device (VBIED)/Person-Borne IED (PBIED) Attack (Unclassified/For Official Use Only) (U//FOUO)
05-6-1006	Plan for Counter-IED (C-IED) Operations (Unclassified/For Official Use Only) (U//FOUO)
07-3-9013	Conduct Action on Contact
17-3-4012	Reconnoiter an Obstacle/Restriction
07-2-5081	Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures (Platoon-Company)
07-2-5009	Conduct a Rehearsal (Platoon-Company)

**SUPPORTING BATTLE/CREW DRILLS**

<b>Drill Number</b>	<b>Drill Title</b>
07-3-D9501	React to Contact (Visual, IED, Direct Fire [includes RPG])
07-3-D9503	React to Ambush (Far)
05-3-D0016	Conduct the 5 Cs

**TASK:** Conduct Zone Reconnaissance (Platoon-Company) (17-2-4010)  
 (FM 3-20.971) (FM 3-20.96) (FM 3-20.98)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit is conducting operations as part of a higher headquarters (HQ) and has received an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct a zone reconnaissance from the line of departure. The operations order specifies the focus, tempo, and engagement criteria for reconnaissance. Communications have been established, and information is being passed in according to the standing operating procedures (SOP). The unit has received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE). Coalition partners, civilians, government agencies, nongovernmental organizations, and the international media may be present in the area. Additional assets may be available to the unit. Contact is possible. Some iterations of this task may be performed in mission-oriented protective posture 4 (MOPP 4).

**STANDARDS:** The unit conducts the zone reconnaissance according to standing operating procedures (SOPs), the order, and or the higher commander’s guidance. The unit gains and reports detailed, timely information concerning all threat forces, infrastructure, and terrain within a zone defined by boundaries. Reconnaissance tempo enables the unit to complete its mission based on the higher HQ time constraints, information requirements and capabilities of the unit. The unit reports information that answers the commander’s critical information requirements (CCIRs) using the communications system that allows timely decisions by the commander and his higher HQ. The unit complies with the ROE.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
PLAN *1. Unit leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources. Intelligence sources include company intelligence support team (CoIST) human intelligence (HUMINT), signal intelligence (SIGINT), and imagery intelligence (IMINT) to include unmanned aircraft systems (UASs) and unattended ground sensors (UGSs). *2. The unit leader receives an OPORD or FRAGO and issues a warning order (WARNO) to include at a minimum: a. The zone reconnaissance mission.		

**Chapter 2**

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>b. The time and place for issuing the OPORD.</p> <p>c. Units or elements participating in the zone reconnaissance.</p> <p>d. Specific tasks not addressed by unit SOPs.</p> <p>e. The timeline for the zone reconnaissance.</p> <p>*3. The unit leader verifies higher HQ information requirements, CCIRs, and priority intelligence requirements (PIRs) and develops a visualization of higher HQ plan.</p> <p>*4. The unit leader conducts troop-leading procedures (TLPs) to develop the order.</p> <p>*5. The unit leader coordinates with the higher HQ to obtain required intelligence products, and initiates a terrain analysis using maps and other terrain products.</p> <p>a. Coordinates with units to obtain required intelligence products, and initiates a terrain analysis.</p> <p>b. Identifies internal resources to be used in the collection effort.</p> <p>c. Updates the common operating picture (COP), if equipped, providing current situational awareness by supplying timely and accurate information for intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB) and the planning process.</p> <p>*6. Unit leader considers the following when planning for a zone reconnaissance mission</p> <p>a. Friendly force considerations, including the following:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Mission of adjacent and follow-on forces.</li> <li>(2) Reconnaissance objectives of higher HQ and follow-on forces.</li> <li>(3) CCIRs of higher HQ and follow-on forces.</li> <li>(4) Higher commander's reconnaissance focus, tempo, and engagement criteria.</li> <li>(5) Missions of surveillance and reconnaissance elements operating within the unit's area of operation (AO).</li> <li>(6) Capabilities and limitations of other surveillance and reconnaissance elements that are attached to the unit.</li> </ol> <p>b. Enemy situation, including the following:</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(1) Type and capabilities of likely enemy weapon systems.</p> <p>(2) Special equipment if available.</p> <p>(3) Higher HQ enemy courses of action (ECOAs), including a situational template (SITTEMP) depicting composition, known and templated dispositions, and potential engagement areas (EAs).</p> <p>c. Terrain and weather considerations, including the following:</p> <p>(1) Effective ranges of weapon systems.</p> <p>(2) Aviation assets for reconnaissance, transport, resupply, fire support, and medical evacuation.</p> <p>(3) Effects on cross-country mobility.</p> <p>d. Civil considerations, including the following:</p> <p>(1) Locations, functions, and jurisdictions of government agencies and offices.</p> <p>(2) Composition and disposition of regional/local military, paramilitary, and law enforcement organizations.</p> <p>(3) Locations of police stations, armories or barracks, encampments, weapons holding areas, and staging areas.</p> <p>e. Implements and integrates higher HQ surveillance and reconnaissance plan.</p> <p>f. Integrates the seven reconnaissance fundamentals.</p> <p>(1) Ensures continuous reconnaissance.</p> <p>(2) Ensures that no reconnaissance assets are kept in reserve.</p> <p>(3) Orients on the reconnaissance objective(s).</p> <p>(4) Reports all information rapidly and accurately.</p> <p>(5) Retains freedom to maneuver.</p> <p>(6) Gains and maintains threat contact.</p> <p>(7) Develops the situation rapidly.</p> <p>g. Develops/refines SIRs, reconnaissance objectives and assigns tasks to subordinate elements.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>h. Determines tempo of the reconnaissance effort and locations where more deliberate reconnaissance is required according to last time information of value (LTIOV).</p> <p>i. Integrates and synchronizes air and ground reconnaissance operations.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Assigns zones for the units.</li> <li>(2) Prioritizes critical tasks to be performed by subordinate elements.</li> <li>(3) Integrates use of air reconnaissance assets and unmanned aircraft systems (UASs), if available.</li> </ol> <p>j. Integrates and synchronizes warfighting functions.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Refines fire support plan.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Refines fire support coordination measures (FSCMs) that support the scheme of maneuver.</li> <li>(b) Coordinates fire support to cover the reconnaissance zone.</li> <li>(c) Assigns priority of fire or nonlethal effects and priority of targets.</li> </ol> </li> <li>(2) Coordinates with engineers to assist with classification of bridges, overpasses, culverts, fords, routes, obstacles, infrastructure, environment, and other classifications related to area damage control in the designated zone.</li> <li>(3) Plans chemical, biological, radiological, and nuclear (CBRN) support.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) If attached or OPCON, integrates CBRN reconnaissance assets into the scheme of maneuver.</li> <li>(b) Ensures CBRN assets are positioned to quickly detect enemy use of CBRN.</li> <li>(c) Plans for immediate and thorough decontamination based on the commander's priorities and vulnerability analysis.</li> </ol> </li> <li>(3) Plans sustainment support.               <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Integrates movement and positioning of sustainment assets with the scheme of maneuver.</li> <li>(b) Anticipates timely resupply of Classes I, III, and V.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(c) Plans and coordinates casualty evacuation.</p> <p>h. Conducts composite risk management.</p> <p>PREPARE</p> <p>*7. The unit leader issues the order.</p> <p>8. Prior to departure, unit informs other units in area and on flanks of times and location for departure, composition, zone(s), and time of return (if applicable) for the reconnaissance.</p> <p>EXECUTE</p> <p>9. Unit moves to and deploys along the line of departure (LD).</p> <p>a. Moves quickly to LD and reports “set” to the element leader.</p> <p>b. Deploys in the organization specified by the element leader or OPORD/FRAGO.</p> <p>c. Deploys using specified formation/ techniques.</p> <p>d. Unit leader reports when in position to the commander when element leaders report they are set.</p> <p>e. Conducts coordination with supporting maneuver and/or air reconnaissance elements as applicable.</p> <p>f. Conducts coordination at contact points with adjacent units on flanks unless directed otherwise.</p> <p>10. Unit executes the LD and conducts tactical movement in the zone.</p> <p>a. Reports to the unit leader (as applicable).</p> <p>b. Deploys in the zone according to OPORD/FRAGO and/or considering the mission given, enemy forces and their capabilities, terrain and weather effects, troops available, time available to execute the operation, and civil considerations (METT-TC).</p> <p>c. Incorporates information from reconnaissance and surveillance assets into the operation.</p> <p>d. Uses effective control measures to enhance situational awareness of the unit.</p> <p>e. Clears or conducts surveillance of assigned checkpoints and named areas of interest (NAIs) within the area of responsibility and reports to the unit leader.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>f. Unit leader reports to the commander execution of all control measures within the assigned area of responsibility.</p> <p>g. If required, executes control measures as directed by the unit leader.</p> <p>h. Unit leader, as applicable, attempts to keep elements on line to prevent gaps in the unit's sector.</p> <p>i. Coordinates movement with supporting maneuver or air reconnaissance elements as applicable.</p> <p>j. Unit, if given a series of reconnaissance objectives, conducts tactical movement to bypass enemy security forces in sector according to bypass criteria.</p> <p>k. Employs dismounted Soldiers to assist in tactical movement when any of the following apply:  <b>NOTE:</b> Leaders of mounted units should plan on dismounting Soldiers for detailed reconnaissance.</p> <p>(1) Detailed reconnaissance is required (such as to observe an NAI, clear a checkpoint, or observe across intervisibility lines).</p> <p>(2) Gathering HUMINT from local populace using indigenous language if possible.</p> <p>(3) Stealth is required.</p> <p>(4) Enemy contact is expected or visual contact has been made.</p> <p>(5) Vehicle movement through a zone is restricted by terrain.</p> <p>(6) Time is available.</p> <p>(7) Security is the primary concern.</p> <p>l. Conducts listening halts at danger areas (woods, built-up areas, defiles, severely restricted terrain) based on METT-TC.</p> <p>11. Unit identifies and reports all threat forces within the zone according to the focus for reconnaissance.</p> <p>a. Identifies threat elements.</p> <p>b. Conducts actions on contact.</p> <p>(1) Deploys and reports, seeking cover and concealment or executing appropriate battle drill.</p> <p>(2) Develops the situation while maintaining sufficient combat power to continue the mission.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(3) Chooses a course of action (COA) that allows freedom of maneuver and focuses on the reconnaissance objective.</p> <p>(4) Execute selected COA.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> The following step may be done in conjunction with step 10.b.(3).</p> <p>(5) Recommends a COA to higher commander.</p> <p>c. Collects and reports accurate information on enemy forces, factions, and other entities within the zone (as applicable), including the following:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Size.</li> <li>(2) Activities.</li> <li>(3) Location.</li> <li>(4) Unit identification.</li> <li>(5) Time and date.</li> <li>(6) Equipment.</li> </ol> <p>12. Unit collects and reports terrain information according to the focus for reconnaissance and assigned PIR/SIR.</p> <p>a. Unit leader determines trafficability of major routes.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Sends route report (ROUTEREP) to the commander (if required).</li> <li>(2) Submits route overlay to the commander (if required).</li> </ol> <p>b. Determines cross-country trafficability of all terrain within the zone.</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Gathers intervisibility line information.</li> <li>(2) Reconnoiters all terrain within the zone to the lateral boundaries.</li> </ol> <p>c. Locates suitable fording or crossing sites near assigned bridges within the zone.</p> <p>d. Locates and classifies all bridges within the zone.</p> <p>e. Locates and classifies all tunnels and underpass's within the zone.</p> <p>f. Locates minefields, obstacles, and urban areas within the zone.</p> <p>g. Determines existence and extent of any CBRN contamination within the zone.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>h. Locates bypasses around urban areas, obstacles, and contaminated areas within the zone.</p> <p>i. Submits appropriate reports (such as ROUTEREP, crossing report [CROSSREP], bridge report [BRIDGEREP], obstacle, CBRN, bypass) to unit leader.</p> <p>13. Unit collects and reports information on the civilian populace and/or infrastructure according to the focus for reconnaissance.</p> <p>a. Establishes and maintains contact with the local civilian and military leadership as directed.</p> <p>b. Identifies key municipal infrastructure, including utilities, sewage, and communications.</p> <p>c. Determines media outlets and publications.</p> <p>d. Identifies local organizations</p> <p>e. Identifies local populace allegiances to factions, religious groups, or other organizations.</p> <p>*14. Unit leader adjusts reconnaissance tempo as required during operations. The leader takes the following actions:</p> <p>a. Action or reaction to chance contact.</p> <p>b. Answer the CCIRs and/or SIRs.</p> <p>c. Acquire high-payoff targets (HPTs).</p> <p>d. Takes action when directed by the higher commander.</p> <p>*15. Unit leader maintains control.</p> <p>a. Leader moves to best observe and influence operations and maintain communications with subordinate units.</p> <p>b. Leader ensures appropriate CCIRs are answered.</p> <p>c. Leader ensures units receive orders and pertinent information.</p> <p>d. Unit conducts reconnaissance handover with other units/elements according to order and/or SOPs if required.</p> <p>e. Unit maintains communications with higher HQ.</p> <p>f. Leader reviews and consolidates zone overlay for correctness and completeness.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>g. Leader tracks, consolidates, and forwards sustainment reports to higher HQ according to order and/or SOPs.</p> <p>h. Leader tracks and disseminates positions and status of supporting units if applicable.</p> <p>ASSESS</p> <p>16. Unit reports reconnaissance information according to order and/or SOPs.</p> <p>a. Confirms or denies higher HQ information requirements (CCIRs and SIRs).</p> <p>b. Provides additional information that may impact operations to include:</p> <p>(1) Source information to include power and/or influence.</p> <p>(2) Approach routes to urban areas for mounted and dismounted forces.</p> <p>(3) Entry points or points of penetration into urban areas.</p> <p>(4) Danger (hazard) areas.</p> <p>(5) Needs of society.</p> <p>17. The unit consolidates and reorganizes as needed.</p> <p>18. Unit continues operations as directed.</p> <p>*indicates a leader task step.</p>		

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
052-192-1270	React to a Possible Improvised Explosive Device (IED) (Unclassified/For Official Use Only) (U//FOUO)
052-192-1271	Identify Visual Indicators of an Improvised Explosive Device (IED) (Unclassified/For Official Use Only) (U//FOUO)
052-192-3262	Prepare for an Improvised Explosive Device (IED) Threat Prior to Movement (Unclassified/For Official Use Only) (U//FOUO)
052-703-9107	Plan for an Improvised Explosive Device (IED) Threat in a COIN Environment (Unclassified/For Official Use Only) (U//FOUO)
171-121-3009	Control Techniques of Movement
171-121-4034	Coordinate With Adjacent Units
171-121-4051	Prepare a Situation Report (SITREP)
171-123-1300	Conduct a Route Reconnaissance

## Chapter 2

---

171-123-1301	Conduct an Area or Zone Reconnaissance
171-620-0011	Conduct Zone/Area Reconnaissance at Company-Troop Level
171-620-0055	Conduct Actions on Contact at Company-Troop Level
171-620-0016	Conduct Route Reconnaissance at Company - Troop Level
171-620-0025	Conduct Patrolling at Company-Troop Level
171-121-4080	Send a Spot Report (SPOTREP)
171-121-4079	Send a Situation Report (SITREP)

### SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Titles</b>
05-2-3091	React to a Possible Improvised Explosive Device (IED), Vehicle Borne IED, Suicide VBIED or Person Borne IED (Unclassified/ For Official Use Only) (U//FOUO)
07-2-5063	Conduct Composite Risk Management (Platoon-Company)
07-2-5081	Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures (Platoon-Company)
09-2-2000	React to Unexploded Ordnance (UXO)
17-2-4000	Conduct Route Reconnaissance (Platoon-Company)
17-2-4025	Conduct Reconnaissance Handover (Platoon-Company)

### SUPPORTING BATTLE/CREW DRILLS

<b>Drill Number</b>	<b>Drill Title</b>
07-3-D9501	React to Contact (Visual, IED, Direct Fire [includes RPG])
07-3-D9503	React to Ambush (Far)
05-3-D0016	Conduct the 5 Cs

**TASK:**Conduct Area Reconnaissance (Platoon-Company) (17-2-4011)

(FM 3-20.98)

(FM 3-20.971)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit conducts operations as part of a higher headquarters (HQ) and receives an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) moves to a specific location and conducts an area reconnaissance. The OPORD specifies the focus, tempo, and engagement criteria for reconnaissance. Communications have been established and information is being passed according to the standing operating procedures (SOPs). The unit has received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE). Coalition partners, civilians, government agencies, nongovernmental organizations, and the international media may be present in the area. Additional assets may be available to the unit. Contact is possible. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture 4 (MOPP 4).

**STANDARDS:** The unit conducts the area reconnaissance according to the SOPs, the order, and/or the higher commander’s guidance. The unit gains and reports detailed information on specified areas, objectives, or danger areas and timely information concerning all enemy forces, infrastructure, and terrain within the area. The unit also identifies source information of power/influence and the needs of society as necessary. Reconnaissance tempo enables the unit to complete its mission based on the higher HQ time constraints, information requirements and capabilities of the unit. The unit reports information that answers the commander’s critical information requirements (CCIRs) using the communications system that allows timely decisions by the commander and higher HQ. The unit complies with the ROE.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>PLAN</p> <p>*1. Unit leader receives an OPORD or a FRAGO that requires the unit to conduct an area reconnaissance and issue a warning order (WARNO) to the unit according to troop-leading procedures (TLPs) and unit SOPs. The WARNO must include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Tentative timeline for the operation, including the latest time for beginning the area reconnaissance.</li> <li>b. Tentative unit organization for the operation.</li> <li>c. Guidance directing the unit to conduct rehearsals; any initial movement; initiation of surveillance, reconnaissance tasks, and the CCIRs.</li> </ul>		

**Chapter 2**

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*2. Unit leader verifies higher HQ information requirements, CCIRs and priority intelligence requirement (PIR).</p> <p>*3. Unit leader conducts TLPs to develop the order.</p> <p>*4. Unit leader coordinates with higher HQ to obtain required intelligence products, and initiates a terrain analysis.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">a. Identifies internal resources to be used in the collection effort.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">b. Uses company intelligence support team (CoIST), to update the common operational picture (COP), if equipped, providing current situational awareness by supplying timely and accurate information for intelligence preparation of the battlefield (IPB) and the planning process.</p> <p>*5. Unit leader plans the area reconnaissance mission.</p> <p style="padding-left: 20px;">a. Leader reviews and considers the following when planning for an area reconnaissance mission:</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(1) Friendly force consideration, including the following:</p> <p style="padding-left: 60px;">(a) Mission adjacent and follow-on forces.</p> <p style="padding-left: 60px;">(b) Reconnaissance objectives of the unit and follow-on forces.</p> <p style="padding-left: 60px;">(c) CCIRs of the unit and follow-on forces.</p> <p style="padding-left: 60px;">(d) Higher commander’s reconnaissance focus, tempo, and engagement criteria.</p> <p style="padding-left: 60px;">(e) Mission of collection assets operating within the unit’s area of operation (AO) but not under the unit’s control.</p> <p style="padding-left: 60px;">(f) Capabilities and limitations of other collection elements.</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(2) Enemy situation, including the following:</p> <p style="padding-left: 60px;">(a) Type and capabilities of likely enemy weapon systems, night vision devices (NVDs) and related systems and surveillance radar.</p> <p style="padding-left: 60px;">(b) Special equipment, such as body armor and unattended ground sensors (UGSs), if available.</p> <p style="padding-left: 60px;">(c) Unit’s enemy courses of action (COAs), including a situation templates depicting composition, known and template dispositions, and potential engagement areas (EAs).</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(3) Terrain and weather considerations:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Effects on effective weapons ranges and NVDs.</li> <li>(b) Effects on aviation assets for reconnaissance, transport, resupply, and medical evacuation (MEDEVAC).</li> <li>(c) Effects on cross-country mobility.</li> <li>(d) Effects on civil functions and services.</li> </ul> <p>(4) Civil considerations, including the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Locations, functions, and jurisdictions of government agencies, offices, and political party headquarters.</li> <li>(b) Composition and disposition of regional/local military, paramilitary, and law enforcement organizations.</li> <li>(c) Locations of police stations, armories or barracks, encampments, weapons holding areas, and staging areas.</li> <li>(e) Descriptions of uniforms, insignias, vehicles, markings, and equipment if applicable.</li> <li>(f) Location of power generation facilities.</li> <li>(g) Locations of communications networks and media outlets.</li> </ul> <p>b. Implements and integrates higher HQ surveillance and reconnaissance plan.</p> <p>c. Integrates the seven reconnaissance fundamentals.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Ensures continuous reconnaissance.</li> <li>(2) Ensures that no reconnaissance assets are kept in reserve.</li> <li>(3) Orients on the reconnaissance objective(s).</li> <li>(4) Reports all information rapidly and accurately.</li> <li>(5) Retains freedom to maneuver.</li> <li>(6) Gains and maintains enemy contact.</li> <li>(7) Develops the situation rapidly.</li> </ul> <p>d. Develops/refines SIR reconnaissance objectives and assigns tasks to subordinate elements.</p>		

**Chapter 2**

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>e. Determines tempo of the reconnaissance effort and locations where more deliberate reconnaissance is required according to last time information of value (LTIOV).</p> <p>f. Integrates and synchronizes air and ground reconnaissance operations.</p> <p>(1) Assigns areas for the subordinate elements.</p> <p>(2) Prioritizes critical tasks to be performed by subordinate elements.</p> <p>(3) Integrates use of air reconnaissance assets and unmanned aircraft systems (UASs), if available.</p> <p>g. Integrates and synchronizes warfighting functions.</p> <p>(1) Refines fire support.</p> <p>(a) Refines fire support coordination measures (FSCMs) that support the scheme of maneuver.</p> <p>(b) Coordinates fire support to cover the reconnaissance area.</p> <p>(c) Assigns priority of fire or nonlethal effects and priority of targets.</p> <p>(4) Plans chemical, biological, radiological, and nuclear (CBRN) support.</p> <p>(a) If attached or under operational control (OPCON), integrates CBRN reconnaissance assets into the scheme of maneuver.</p> <p>(b) Ensures CBRN assets are positioned to quickly detect enemy use of CBRN.</p> <p>(c) Plans for immediate and thorough decontamination based on the commander’s priorities and vulnerability analysis.</p> <p>(5) Plans sustainment support.</p> <p>(a) Integrates movement and positioning of sustainment assets with the scheme of maneuver.</p> <p>(b) Anticipates timely resupply of Classes I, III, and V.</p> <p>(c) Plans and coordinates casualty evacuation.</p> <p>h. Conducts composite risk management.</p> <p>PREPARE</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*6. Unit leader organizes the reconnaissance force according to size, geography, physical infrastructure, and social dynamics of the area to be reconnoitered.</p> <p>*7. Unit leader identifies control measures needed during area reconnaissance to include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Graphic control measures.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Line of departure (LD).</li> <li>(2) Lateral boundaries.</li> <li>(3) Limit of advance (LOA).</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Movement coordination measures.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Phase lines.</li> <li>(2) Contact points.</li> <li>(3) Check points.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>8. Prior to departure, unit informs other units in area and on flanks of times and location for departure, composition, area(s), and time of return (if applicable) for the reconnaissance.</p> <p>EXECUTE</p> <p>9. Unit moves to and deploys along the LD.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Moves quickly to LD and reports “SET” to the unit leader.</li> <li>b. Deploys in the organization specified by the unit leader OPORD or FRAGO.</li> <li>c. Deploys using specified formation techniques.</li> <li>d. Unit leader reports “set” to the commander when element leaders report they are set.</li> <li>e. Conducts coordination with supporting maneuver and/or air reconnaissance elements as applicable.</li> <li>f. Conducts coordination at contact points with adjacent units on flanks unless directed otherwise.</li> </ul> <p>10. Unit executes the LD and conducts tactical movement in the area.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Reports to the unit leader.</li> <li>b. Deploys in the area according to OPORD/FRAGO and/or considering the mission given, enemy forces and their capabilities, terrain and weather effects, troops available, time available to execute the operation, and civil considerations (METT-TC).</li> <li>c. Incorporates information from reconnaissance and surveillance assets into the operation.</li> </ul>		

**Chapter 2**

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. Uses effective control measures to enhance situational awareness of the unit.</p> <p>e. Clears or conducts surveillance of assigned checkpoints and named areas of interests (NAIs) within the area of responsibility and reports to the unit leader.</p> <p>f. Unit leader reports to the commander execution of all control measures within the assigned area of responsibility.</p> <p>g. If required, executes control measures as directed by the unit leader/ commander.</p> <p>h. Unit leader, as applicable, attempts to keep teams on line to prevent gaps in the unit's sector.</p> <p>i. Coordinates movement with supporting maneuver or air reconnaissance elements as applicable.</p> <p>j. Unit, if given a series of area reconnaissance objectives, conducts tactical movement to bypass enemy security forces in sector according to bypass criteria.</p> <p>k. Employs dismounted elements to assist in tactical movement when any of the following apply:  <b>NOTE:</b> Leaders of mounted units should plan on dismounting Soldiers for detailed reconnaissance.</p> <p>(1) Detailed reconnaissance is required (such as to observe an NAI, clear a checkpoint, or observe across intervisibility lines).</p> <p>(2) Gathering human intelligence (HUMINT) from local populace using indigenous language if possible.</p> <p>(3) Stealth is required.</p> <p>(4) Enemy contact is expected or visual contact has been made.</p> <p>(5) Vehicle movement through an area is restricted by terrain.</p> <p>(6) Time is available.</p> <p>(7) Security is the primary concern.</p> <p>l. Conducts listening halts at danger areas (woods, built-up areas, defiles, severely restricted terrain) based on METT-TC.</p> <p>11. Unit identifies and reports all enemy forces within the area according to the focus for reconnaissance.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>a. Identifies enemy elements.</p> <p>b. Conducts actions on contact.</p> <p>(1) Deploys and reports, seeking cover and concealment or executing appropriate battle drill.</p> <p>(2) Develops the situation while maintaining sufficient combat power to continue the mission.</p> <p>(3) Chooses a course of action (COA) that allows freedom of maneuver and focuses on the reconnaissance objective.</p> <p>(4) Execute selected COA.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> The following step may be done in conjunction with step 11.b (3).</p> <p>(5) Recommends a COA to higher commander.</p> <p>c. Collects and reports accurate information on enemy forces, factions, and other entities within the area (as applicable), including the following:</p> <p>(1) Size.</p> <p>(2) Activities.</p> <p>(3) Location.</p> <p>(4) Unit identification.</p> <p>(5) Time and date.</p> <p>(6) Equipment.</p> <p>12. Unit collects and reports terrain information according to the focus for reconnaissance and assigned priority intelligence requirements (PIRs) and SIRs.</p> <p>*13. Unit leader adjusts reconnaissance tempo as required during operations to:</p> <p>a. Act or react to chance contact.</p> <p>b. Answer the CCIRs and/or SIRs.</p> <p>c. Acquire high-payoff targets (HPTs).</p> <p>d. When directed by the higher commander.</p> <p>*14. Unit leader maintains control.</p> <p>a. Leader moves to best observe and influence operations and maintain communications with subordinate units.</p> <p>b. Leader ensures appropriate CCIRs are answered.</p> <p>c. Leader ensures designated units receive orders and pertinent information.</p>		

**Chapter 2**

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>15. Unit conducts reconnaissance handover with other units/elements according to order and/or SOPs.</p> <p>a. Unit maintains communications with higher HQ.</p> <p>b. Unit reviews and consolidates area overlay for correctness and completeness.</p> <p>c. Unit tracks, consolidates, and forwards sustainment reports to higher HQ according to order and/or SOPs.</p> <p>d. Unit tracks and disseminates positions and status of supporting units if applicable.</p> <p>16. Unit reports reconnaissance information according to order and/or SOPs.</p> <p>a. Confirms or denies higher HQ information requirements (CCIRs and SIRs).</p> <p>b. Provides additional information that may impact operations to include:</p> <p>(1) Source information to include power and/ or influence.</p> <p>(2) Approach routes to urban areas for mounted and dismounted forces.</p> <p>(3) Entry points or points of penetration into urban areas.</p> <p>(4) Danger (hazard) areas.</p> <p>(5) Needs of society.</p> <p>ASSESS</p> <p>17. Unit consolidates and reorganizes, as needed.</p> <p>18. Unit continues operations as directed.</p> <p>* indicates a leader task step.</p>		

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
052-192-1270	React to a Possible Improvised Explosive Device (IED) (Unclassified/For Official Use Only) (U//FOUO)
052-192-1271	Identify Visual Indicators of an Improvised Explosive Device (IED) (Unclassified/For Official Use Only) (U//FOUO)
052-192-3262	Prepare for an Improvised Explosive Device (IED) Threat Prior to Movement (Unclassified/For Official Use Only) (U//FOUO)

052-703-9107	Plan for an Improvised Explosive Device (IED) Threat in a COIN Environment (Unclassified/For Official Use Only) (U//FOUO)
171-121-3009	Control Techniques of Movement
171-121-4034	Coordinate With Adjacent Units
171-121-4051	Prepare a Situation Report (SITREP)
171-123-1300	Conduct a Route Reconnaissance
171-123-1301	Conduct an Area or Zone Reconnaissance
171-620-0011	Conduct Zone/Area Reconnaissance at Company-Troop Level
171-620-0055	Conduct Actions on Contact at Company-Troop Level

### **SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-2-3091	React to a Possible Improvised Explosive Device (IED), Vehicle Borne IED, Suicide VBIED or Person Borne IED (Unclassified/For Official Use Only) (U//FOUO)
07-2-5081	Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures (Platoon-Company)
17-2-4000	Conduct Route Reconnaissance (Platoon-Company)
17-2-4010	Conduct a Zone Reconnaissance (Platoon-Company)
17-2-4025	Conduct Reconnaissance Handover (Platoon-Company)

### **SUPPORTING BATTLE/CREW DRILLS**

<b>Drill Number</b>	<b>Drill Title</b>
07-3-D9501	React to Contact (Visual, IED, Direct Fire [includes RPG])
05-3-D0016	Conduct the 5 Cs

**TASK:** Conduct Area Security (Platoon-Company) (07-2-1324.P)

(FM 3-21.10)

(FM 3-21.8)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit conducts operations as part of a higher headquarters (HQ) and receives an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct area security operations at the location and time specified. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. Local populace and factions may or may not be cooperative. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be conducted during limited visibility conditions. This task should not be trained in mission-oriented protective posture 4 (MOPP 4).

**STANDARDS:** The unit conducts area security according to the standing operating procedures (SOPs), the order, and/or higher commander's guidance. The unit establishes a force presence throughout the area of operations (AO). The unit prevents threat ground reconnaissance elements from directly observing friendly activities within the area being secured; and it prevents threat ground maneuver forces from penetrating the defensive perimeters established by the unit leader.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>PLAN</p> <p>*1. Unit leaders gain and/or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources. Intelligence sources include company intelligence support team (CoIST), human intelligence (HUMINT), signal intelligence (SIGINT), and imagery intelligence (IMINT) to include unmanned aircraft systems (UASs) and unattended ground sensors (UGSs).</p> <p>*2. The unit leader receives an OPORD or FRAGO and issues a warning order (WARNO) to include at a minimum:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. The mission or nature of the area security.</li> <li>b. The time and place for issuing the OPORD.</li> <li>c. Units or elements participating in the area security.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. Specific tasks not addressed by unit SOPs.  e. The timeline for the area security.</p> <p>*3. The unit leader plans for the mission using troop-leading procedures (TLPs). He takes the following actions:</p> <p>a. Conducts a map reconnaissance of the AO.  (1) Identifies and marks boundaries for AO.  (2) Identifies locations for possible observation posts and checkpoints.</p> <p>b. Determines liaison requirements.</p> <p>c. Coordinates for liaison officers, local guides, interpreters as required.</p> <p>d. Determines reporting requirements to higher HQ.</p> <p>e. Develops casualty evacuation (CASEVAC) procedures.</p> <p>f. Identifies security measures.</p> <p>g. Identifies areas where U.S. forces should not go (for example, religious shrines, areas where the peace mandate or other agreement restrict U.S. access).</p> <p>h. Identifies protection requirements.</p> <p>i. Determines resupply requirements.</p> <p>j. Plans for employment of augmentations to unit such as civil military detachments, military police teams, and sniper teams, as required.</p> <p>k. Develops task organization required to accomplish the mission.</p> <p>l. Addresses actions on chance contact with enemy.</p> <p>*4. The unit leader establishes a reserve force. He takes the following actions:</p> <p>a. Designates the reserve force element.</p> <p>b. Selects primary and alternate positions for the reserve force.</p> <p>c. Selects routes to projected places of employment.</p> <p>d. Designates control measures.</p> <p>e. Defines linkup procedures.</p> <p>f. Identifies conditions for employment.</p> <p>PREPARE</p> <p>*5. The unit leader provides intelligence requirements to security force.</p> <p>*6. The unit leader identifies the security task required to be performed. He takes the following actions:</p>		

**Chapter 2**

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>a. Identifies the need for reconnaissance and/or combat patrols.</p> <p>b. Determines the need for checkpoints.</p> <p>c. Identifies the requirement for convoy escorts.</p> <p>d. Determines the need for observation posts (Ops).</p> <p>*7. The unit leader disseminates reports (if applicable), overlays, and other pertinent information to subordinates to keep them abreast of the situation.</p> <p>*8. The unit leader issues clear and concise tasking, orders and instructions to include ROE. He issues FRAGOs, as necessary, to address changes to the plan identified during the rehearsal.</p> <p>9. The unit conducts a rehearsal (includes rehearsal of reserve force).</p> <p>EXECUTE</p> <p>10. The unit establishes and occupies an outpost as required.</p> <p>11. The unit conducts area security mission. It takes the following actions:</p> <p>a. Executes patrols as required.</p> <p>(1) Conducts reconnaissance patrols when necessary. Takes the following actions:</p> <p>(a) Executes a route reconnaissance.</p> <p>(b) Executes an area reconnaissance.</p> <p>(c) Executes a zone reconnaissance.</p> <p>(d) Executes a point reconnaissance.</p> <p>(e) Executes a leader’s reconnaissance.</p> <p>(2) Conducts combat patrols when needed. Takes the following actions:</p> <p>(a) Executes a raid patrol.</p> <p>(b) Executes an ambush patrol.</p> <p>(c) Executes a security patrol.</p> <p>(3) Establishes patrol routes and schedules as required.</p> <p>(4) Assigns mission to elements and supervises their activities.</p> <p>(5) Maintains communications with higher HQ and subordinate units.</p> <p>(6) Maintains capability to reinforce or support patrols with fires according to order, guidance, and or SOPs.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>NOTE:</b> The unit’s habitual use of elements to patrol selected areas should help the unit develop familiarity with the community and the area and build trust and confidence with the citizens. If cordon and search operations or vehicle inspections are required, units familiar with the area and the populace should conduct the mission.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(7) Debriefs patrols as required.</li> <li>b. Establishes hasty or deliberate checkpoints. Takes the following actions:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Positions checkpoint in an area clear of hazards.</li> <li>(2) Positions checkpoint where it is visible.</li> <li>(3) Positions vehicles to deter resistance to Soldiers manning checkpoint.</li> <li>(4) Emplaces obstacles to slow traffic into search area.</li> <li>(5) Establishes a reserve.</li> <li>(6) Establishes a bypass lane.</li> <li>(7) Establishes communications within checkpoint area.</li> <li>(8) Designates search area.</li> <li>(9) Constructs and equips checkpoint.</li> </ul> </li> <li>c. Secures routes.</li> <li>d. Conducts OP operations. Takes the following actions:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Identifies activities or locations to be observed.</li> <li>(2) Conducts reconnaissance to select OP sites across unit AO.</li> <li>(3) Assigns OP missions.</li> <li>(4) Repositions Ops as required.</li> <li>(5) Maintains capability to reinforce or support OP(s) by fires according to order, guidance, and/or SOPs.</li> </ul> </li> <li>e. Executes convoy escorts for military or civilian movements as required.</li> <li>f. React to civil disturbances.</li> <li>g. Searches buildings. Takes the following actions:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Identifies object of search (for example, weapons, contraband, and so forth).</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

**Chapter 2**

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(2) Ensures coordination has been conducted for required augmentation such as explosive ordinance disposal (EOD) or military working dogs (MWDs).</p> <p>(3) Reports inspection results according to ROE, higher HQ orders, or SOPs.</p> <p>h. Secures selected sites (for example, voting sites, refugee camps, schools, churches) according to ROE, and higher HQ orders. Takes the following actions:</p> <p>(1) Conducts reconnaissance to identify sites.</p> <p>(2) Assigns subordinate element missions.</p> <p>i. Enforces curfews. Takes the following actions:</p> <p>(1) Publicizes the curfew periods.</p> <p>(2) Monitors curfew compliance.</p> <p>j. Stabilizes areas with escalating tension. Takes the following actions:</p> <p>(1) Identifies potential “hot spots” of increased tension.</p> <p>(2) Determines which factions may be involved and their probable objectives.</p> <p>(3) Coordinates with factions to resolve real or perceived problems.</p> <p>(4) Dispatches coordination or liaison teams as required.</p> <p>(5) Reports developments of any de-stabilizing incidents and other changes to situation to higher HQ as required.</p> <p>k. Demonstrates resolve, confidence, commitment, and sensitivity for local customs and people living in the AO by attending local events.</p> <p>l. Coordinates for disposition of detained personnel, documents, equipment, and weapons.</p> <p>m. Commits the reserve force as required.</p> <p>n. Establishes an upgraded alert status for elements in affected and adjacent areas, as needed.</p> <p>o. Submits reports according to higher HQ order and SOPs.</p> <p>ASSESS</p> <p>12. The unit consolidates and reorganizes as needed.</p> <p>13. The unit continues operations as directed.</p> <p>* indicates a leader task step.</p>		

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
171-121-4045	Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures
171-610-0001	Perform a Map Reconnaissance
171-300-0008	Secure a Critical Area at Platoon Level
071-326-5502	Issue a Fragmentary Order
071-326-5503	Issue a Warning Order

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
07-2-1387	Employ a Reserve Force (Platoon-Company)
07-2-1405	Establish an Outpost (Platoon-Company)
07-2-1450	Secure Routes (Platoon-Company)
07-2-2054	Reconnoiter a Built-up Area (Platoon-Company)
07-2-4054	Secure Civilians During Operations (Platoon-Company)
07-2-5009	Conduct a Rehearsal (Platoon-Company)
07-2-5036	Conduct Coordination (Platoon-Company)
07-2-5045	Conduct Negotiations (Platoon-Company)
07-2-5063	Conduct Composite Risk Management (Platoon-Company)
07-2-6063	Maintain Operations Security (Platoon-Company)
07-2-9006	Conduct a Passage of Lines as the Passing Unit (Platoon-Company)
07-2-9051	Conduct a Cordon and Search (Platoon-Company)
07-3-9013	Conduct an Action on Contact
07-3-9016	Establish an Observation Post
07-3-9017	Conduct Actions at Danger Areas
07-3-9018	Enter and Clear a Building (Section-Platoon)
07-3-9023	Conduct a Presence Patrol
08-2-0004	Evacuate Casualties
19-3-2007	Conduct Convoy Security
19-3-2406	Conduct Roadblock and Checkpoint
19-3-4004	Conduct Civil Disturbance Control
44-3-3220	Perform Passive Air Defense Measures
44-3-3221	Perform Active Air Defense Measures

**SUPPORTING BATTLE/CREW DRILLS**

<b>Drill Number</b>	<b>Drill Title</b>
07-4-D9509	Enter and Clear a Room
05-3-D0016	Conduct the 5Cs
05-3-D0017	React to an IED Attack While Mounted
05-3-D0015	React to an IED Attack While Dismounted

**TASK:**Secure Routes (Platoon-Company) (07-2-1450)

(FM 3-21.10) (FM 3-21.8)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit conducts operations as part of a higher headquarters (HQ) and receives an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to secure one or more routes. The start points and release points are specified. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. Engineer support is available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture 4 (MOPP 4).

**STANDARDS:** The unit secures the routes in according to the standing operating procedures (SOPs), the order, and or higher commander’s guidance. The unit clears and secures the route, and marks the route and or provides guides. The unit complies with the ROE.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>PLAN</p> <p>*1. Unit leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources. Intelligence sources include company intelligence support team (CoIST) human intelligence (HUMINT), signal intelligence (SIGINT), and imagery intelligence (IMINT) to include unmanned aircraft systems (UASs) and unattended ground sensors (UGSs).</p> <p>*2. The unit leader receives an OPORD or FRAGO and issues a warning order (WARNO) to the unit.</p> <p>*3. The unit leader plans using troop-leading procedures (TLPs). He takes the following actions:</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">a. Conducts analysis based on factors of mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC).</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>b. Considers the enemy’s capabilities, likely courses of action (COAs), and specific weapons capabilities.</p> <p>c. Conducts a map reconnaissance. Takes the following actions:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Identifies the routes, critical points, checkpoints, and control measures.</li> <li>(2) Identifies tentative rally points.</li> <li>(3) Identifies tentative security and support by fire.</li> <li>(4) Identifies likely enemy avenues of approach.</li> <li>(5) Identifies routes to and from rally points.</li> <li>(6) Identifies tentative observation post locations.</li> <li>(7) Marks tentative dismount points on maps as appropriate.</li> <li>(8) Identifies choke points that canalize movement.</li> <li>(9) Identifies potential danger areas.</li> <li>(10) Identifies possible by pass for danger areas, obstacles, and or choke points.</li> <li>(11) Determines locations of bridges.</li> <li>(12) Determines classification of bridges, if possible.</li> </ol> <p>d. Plans and coordinates indirect fire support and or close air support, if available.</p> <p>e. Identifies direct fire responsibilities.</p> <p>f. Designates control measures such as checkpoints.</p> <p>g. Identifies communication requirements.</p> <p>h. Coordinates and synchronizes activities within each warfighting function.</p> <p>i. Organizes the company as necessary to accomplish the mission and or compensate for combat losses.</p> <p>j. Addresses actions on chance contact with the enemy.</p> <p>k. Plans and coordinates sustainment.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*4. The unit leader coordinates with the reserve force leader, if applicable. He takes the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Confirms reserve force radio frequencies, call signs, and recognition signals.</li> <li>b. Identifies probable linkup points.</li> <li>c. Confirms linkup procedures.</li> <li>d. Confirms battle hand off procedures.</li> <li>e. Confirms procedures for transfer of information.</li> <li>f. Addresses unit actions when encountering the following:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Enemy forces and or persons</li> <li>(2) Mines and booby-traps.</li> <li>(3) Snipers.</li> <li>(4) Roadblocks.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>*5. The unit leader issues clear and concise tasking, orders and instructions to include ROE. PREPARE</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>6. The unit conducts a rehearsal.</li> </ul> <p>*7. The unit leader issues FRAGOs, as needed, to address changes to the plan identified during the rehearsal.</p> <p>*8. The unit leader or designated representative and reconnaissance element conducts the reconnaissance based on factors of METT-TC. He takes the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Pinpoints the routes, critical points, checkpoints, and rally points.</li> <li>b. Verifies and updates intelligence information.</li> <li>c. Leaves a surveillance team to observe the routes and critical points as required.</li> <li>d. Returns to unit position.</li> </ul> <p>*9. The unit leader adjusts the plan based on updated intelligence and reconnaissance effort.</p> <p>*10. The unit leader updates the enemy situation.</p> <p>*11. The unit leader disseminates updated reports (if applicable), overlays, and other pertinent information.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>12. The unit moves to the start point (SP). EXECUTE</p> <p>13. The unit elements conduct route security operations. They take the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provide a route overlay or detailed sketch to higher HQ, convoys, and escorts, if used.</li> <li>b. Secure critical and or dominant terrain.</li> <li>c. Establish surveillance of the routes.</li> <li>d. Occupy observation posts (Ops) with clear fields of observation.</li> <li>e. Mark and/or clear the routes of mines and booby-traps within their capability.</li> <li>f. Repair bridges and prepares fords and bypasses within their capability.</li> <li>g. Mark the routes and/or provides guides at bypasses and or detours along the routes, as required.</li> <li>h. Patrol the designated routes.</li> <li>i. Send SITREPs using the size, activity, location, unit, time, and equipment (SALUTE) format.</li> </ul> <p>*14. The unit leader supervises routes security operations. He takes the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensures element leaders and escorts report control measures as directed by the OPORD or SOPs.</li> <li>b. Maintains communications with elements, Ops, security patrols, reserve force, and higher HQ.</li> <li>c. Monitors convoys in transit along the routes.</li> <li>d. Maintains routine civilian traffic flow.</li> <li>e. Reacts to the attempts of route interdiction according to the ROE, order, and or guidance from higher HQ. Takes the following actions: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Employs units to defeat enemy forces.</li> <li>(2) Requests reserve force support, if available.</li> <li>(3) Employs other elements such as aviation, if available.</li> </ul> </li> <li>f. Employs the reserve force as part of the unit or, responds to orders of reserve force leader, depending on decision of the unit leader.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
g. Submits reports according to the OPORD and unit SOPs. h. Uses FRAGOs as needed to redirect actions of subordinate elements. ASSESS 15. The unit consolidates and reorganizes as needed. 16. The unit continues operations as directed. * Indicates a leader task step.		

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
171-610-0001	Perform a Map Reconnaissance
071-326-5705	Establish an Observation Post
071-332-5000	Prepare an Operation Overlay
071-410-0010	Conduct a Leaders Reconnaissance
071-326-5505	Issue an Operation Order at the Company, Platoon, or Squad Level
071-326-5502	Issue a Fragmentary Order
071-326-5503	Issue a Warning Order
171-121-4051	Prepare a Situation Report (SITREP)
171-121-4045	Conduct Troop Leading Procedures

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
05-1-1006	Plan for Counter-IED (C-IED) Operations (Unclassified/For Official Use Only) (U//FOUO)
05-2-3091	React to a Possible Improvised Explosive Device (IED), Vehicle Borne IED, Suicide VBIED or Person Borne IED (Unclassified/For Official Use Only) (U//FOUO)
05-2-3092	Prepare for a Suspected Vehicle-Borne Improvised Explosive Device (VBIED)/Person-Borne IED (PBIED) Attack (Unclassified/For Official Use Only) (U//FOUO)
07-2-1342	Conduct Tactical Movement (Platoon-Company)
07-2-3018	Employ Snipers (Platoon-Company)
07-2-3036	Integrate Indirect Fire Support (Platoon-Company)
07-2-5009	Conduct a Rehearsal (Platoon-Company)
07-2-5027	Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Platoon-Company)

## Chapter 2

---

07-2-5063	Conduct Composite Risk Management (Platoon-Company)
07-2-6063	Maintain Operations Security (Platoon-Company)
07-3-9016	Establish an Observation Post
08-2-0003	Treat Casualties
08-2-0004	Evacuate Casualties

### **SUPPORTING BATTLE/CREW DRILLS**

<b>Drill Number</b>	<b>Drill Title</b>
07-3-D9501	React to Contact (Visual, IED, Direct Fire [includes RPG])
05-3-D0016	Conduct the 5Cs

**TASK:** Conduct Roadblock and Checkpoint Operations (19-3-2406)

(FM 3-39)

(FM 3-19.4)

(ADP 5-0)

**CONDITIONS:** The element receives an order from higher headquarters (HQ) to establish a roadblock and/or checkpoint in its area of operations (AO). The local police or security forces may assist with the operations. The unit has received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE), rules of interaction (ROI), and escalation of force (EOF). Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture 4 (MOPP 4).

**STANDARDS:** The element conducts roadblock and checkpoint operations. The element plans and constructs a roadblock and/or checkpoint according to the commander's guidance. The roadblock and/or checkpoint controls vehicular and pedestrian traffic by preventing passage or limiting entry to and exit from the specified area. The element complies with the ROE, ROI, and EOF, mission instructions, higher HQ order, and other special orders. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in MOPP 4.

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO-GO</b>
*1. The element leader prepares to conduct roadblock and/or checkpoint operations by initiating troop-leading procedures. He takes the following actions: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducts an estimate of the situation.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Conducts a detailed mission analysis.</li> <li>(2) Includes time for understanding and restating the mission.</li> <li>(3) Uses the backward-planning sequence to schedule troop-leading procedures.</li> <li>(4) Verifies the commander's critical information requirements.</li> <li>(5) Requests or conducts an intelligence preparation of the battlefield and a threat analysis.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>NOTE:</b> Units should consider roadblocks and checkpoints as an information/intelligence source. In addition, the police intelligence operations (PIO) function represents military police (MP) capability to collect and process relevant information from many sources generally associated with policing activities or military police operations. As an integrating function, PIO describes an approach to all other MP functions that ensures their integration with all relevant police activities and organizations in the operations process and the AO.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Issues a warning order to all squads.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Includes a mission statement (who, what, where, when, and why).</li> <li>(2) Includes friendly and hostile situations.</li> <li>(3) Includes general and special instructions.</li> </ul> </li> <li>c. Makes a tentative plan.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Analyzes the mission using mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, civil considerations (METT-TC).</li> <li>(2) Compares courses of action.</li> </ul> </li> <li>d. Coordinates with higher HQ for the eight-digit grid coordinates of the area to be used.</li> <li>e. Coordinates with adjacent and/or supported units in the element's AO.</li> <li>f. Implements plans that instruct the element to operate the roadblock and/or checkpoint for 24 hours continuously, if needed (based on the mission).</li> <li>g. Implements a standing operating procedure (SOPs) for moving the roadblock and/or checkpoint, as needed according to the security and operations plan.</li> <li>h. Disseminates and enforces the ROE, EOF guidelines, and ROI.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Ensures that personnel are aware of and follow the ROE, EOF, and ROI.</li> <li>(2) Ensures personnel know the rules regarding search, arrest, standoff distances, and the use of force.</li> <li>(3) Directs personnel to attack and disable all vehicles or personnel attempting to breach or flee.</li> <li>(4) Directs personnel to eliminate hostile elements and vehicles that initiate or return fire.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(5) Directs personnel to eliminate hostile elements and vehicles that persist in attempting a breach.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Nonlethal tactics and capabilities are always supported, held in reserve, or overwatched by lethal capabilities.</p> <p>*2. The subordinate element leader prepares for the mission. He takes the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensures that functionality checks are performed on communications equipment and digital systems, if available.</li> <li>b. Ensures that communications are established using Force XXI Battle Command-Brigade and Below (FBCB2), if available.</li> <li>c. Plans for a mission control cell to communicate with higher HQ and issue orders and/or reports (digitally), if available.</li> <li>d. Coordinates for mission essential logistical and sustainment supplies (such as Class I, II, III, IV, V supplies).</li> <li>e. Directs squad leaders to conduct a map reconnaissance and develop overlays with all known friendly forces and routes plotted by using maps and/or digital means.</li> <li>f. Determines the type of roadblock and/or checkpoint (deliberate or hasty) to establish, based on mission requirements.</li> <li>g. Briefs elements on the ROE, ROI, and EOF.</li> <li>h. Conducts a precombat inspection.</li> <li>i. Ensures that a sleep plan is established at the element level.</li> <li>j. Ensures that a medical evacuation plan is established.</li> <li>k. Ensures that military working dog (MWD) teams are available.</li> <li>l. Ensures that an explosive ordnance disposal (EOD) team is available.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>NOTE:</b> In the event that the MWD detects explosives or other substances, the MWD team should withdraw immediately from the vehicle. The area should be evacuated and the chain of command notified. Radio operations are stopped until the MWD team and security forces reach a safe distance from the suspected explosives. The MWD team stays behind a barrier at a safe distance in case the EOD team leader requests further detection assistance.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>m. Coordinates for interpreters, host nation police, or host nation authorities.</li> <li>n. Coordinates for logistical support for lighting when needed.</li> <li>o. Coordinates for engineer support for emplacing obstacles, barriers, and structures.</li> </ul> <p>*3. The subordinate element leader supervises the element and ensures that roadblocks and/or checkpoints are set up properly. He takes the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Verifies the location and/or route of the roadblock and/or checkpoint with the element leader.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Ensures that the location provides good cover and concealment.</li> <li>(2) Ensures that the selected location is adequate for the creation of a roadblock and/or checkpoint.</li> <li>(3) Verifies the location with higher HQ.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Establishes security and defensive positions.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Ensures that the roadblock and/or checkpoint is located at a defensible site.</li> <li>(2) Ensures that the roadblock and/or checkpoint has crew-served weapons that can provide overwatch and cover the entire site.</li> <li>(3) Directs the establishment of fields of fire that cover the approaches to the roadblock and/or checkpoint.</li> <li>(4) Ensures that the elements construct the roadblock and/or checkpoint according to the leader's guidance.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>*4. The subordinate element leader directs the element to prepare for roadblock and/or checkpoint operations. He takes the following actions:</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>a. Identifies the exact area to set up the roadblock and/or checkpoint.</p> <p>b. Ensures that the roadblock and/or checkpoint cannot be seen from a distance.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> This keeps drivers from turning off when they see the roadblock and/or checkpoint. If possible roadblock or checkpoint location should not allow for high speed approach.</p> <p>c. Ensures that the element uses existing culverts, bridges, deep cuts, sharp bends, or dips in the road to create a roadblock and/or checkpoint.</p> <p>d. Reports the exact location of the roadblock and/or checkpoint to the element leader.</p> <p>e. Ensures that fighting positions are prepared for each squad member.</p> <p>f. Establishes vehicle and personnel search procedures according to established authorizations, the SOP, and ROE.</p> <p>g. Assigns personnel to establish male and female search teams.</p> <p>h. Ensures that the assault force is in place to pursue those who attempt to avoid the roadblock and/or checkpoint.</p> <p>i. Ensures that the element marks all perimeter barriers, wires, and limits with warning signs, to include speed limit.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Warning signs should be posted in the native and English languages in the roadblock and/or checkpoint area. If possible warning signs should be placed at various distances leading up to RB/CP (Example: 150, 100, 50 meters, and STOP). Signs should also specify when deadly force is authorized for failure to comply with posted warnings (based on the established SOP, orders, ROE, and EOF).</p> <p>5. The element constructs a roadblock. It takes the following actions:</p> <p>a. Positions the roadblock at or near an intersection or near an area that allows for vehicles to be easily rerouted or turned around.</p> <p>b. Positions the roadblock so that it does not allow unauthorized vehicles or enemy personnel to bypass.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Places barricades along the road, shoulders, and ditches to channel passing traffic.</p> <p>d. Ensures that there is adequate lighting for drivers to see the roadblock.</p> <p>e. Positions squad vehicles in a covered and concealed location near the squad's position.</p> <p>f. Ensures that if barriers are used across the roadway, they have an opening where slow-moving vehicles can enter to allow the search teams time to observe them closely.</p> <p>g. Establishes security force positions.</p> <p>h. Ensures that a translator is present at the roadblock.</p> <p>6. The element constructs a checkpoint. It takes the following actions:</p> <p>a. Establishes a deliberate or hasty checkpoint.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Establish a deliberate checkpoint when it will be in operation for a long period of time (13 hours or more). A deliberate checkpoint is permanent or semi-permanent and is typically constructed to protect an operating base or well-established main supply route.</p> <p>b. Establishes a hasty checkpoint when used for a set period of time, usually a short duration (approximately 5 to 30 minutes).</p> <p>c. Establishes security and defensive positions.</p> <p>d. Establishes a checkpoint where it is hidden from distant view (usually for a hasty checkpoint).</p> <p>e. Creates approach lanes that force traffic to slow down, and directs vehicles to the designated areas.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Engineer tape, debris, trees, and rocks can be used for hasty checkpoints. Deliberate checkpoints should be constructed of more permanent structures that may require engineer support (such as barriers, dragon's teeth, concertina wire, caltrops, cement blocks, and buildings).</p> <p>f. Establishes holding areas.</p> <p>g. Establishes an initial search area or zone.</p> <p>h. Establishes detailed search areas for personnel (male and female) and vehicles.</p> <p>i. Establishes security force positions.</p> <p>j. Ensures that there is adequate lighting for night operations.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>k. Ensures that a translator is present at the checkpoints.</p> <p>7. The element establishes vehicle checkpoint zones or areas. It takes the following actions:</p> <p>a. Establishes the initial search zone.  <b>NOTE:</b> The initial search zone is a distant visual search area where vehicles and personnel are ordered (by visual or audio means) to stop at a clearly marked point before they actually enter the checkpoint. Personnel and vehicles can be visually searched from a predetermined distance (approximately 25 to 100 meters or as the mission dictates) while checkpoint operators remain behind a protective barrier or vehicle. Personnel are ordered to exit their vehicle, open their vehicle compartments, uncover or take out items from their vehicle, open or pull up their overgarments, turn around, and perform any other additional measures according to the SOP. This visual search is conducted before bringing personnel and vehicles into the checkpoint for a detailed search. Local support authorities can be used for this area. The initial search zone is more applicable to a deliberate checkpoint but can be used for a hasty checkpoint if the mission allows.</p> <p>b. Establishes a canalization zone.  <b>NOTE:</b> Natural and/or artificial obstacles are used for a canalization zone to canalize vehicles into the checkpoint with no way to exit without the consent of personnel controlling the checkpoint. This zone encompasses the maximum effective range of the unit's weapons systems.</p> <p>c. Establishes a turning or deceleration zone.  <b>NOTE:</b> The turning or deceleration zone forces vehicles to decelerate and make slow turns. If individuals attempt to maintain their speed they could crash into a series of obstacles.</p> <p>d. Ensures that fighting positions are prepared for each element member.</p> <p>e. Establishes a detailed search zone.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>NOTE:</b> The detailed search zone is a relatively secure area where personnel and vehicles are positively identified and a complete detailed search is conducted. Blocking obstacles are used to isolate vehicles or individuals from others with overwatch protection from weapon positions. The search zone is further subdivided into three subordinate requirements.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Uses partitions or screened areas for privacy.</li> <li>(2) Provides all-around security, protective barriers, and rapid removal areas for personnel and detainees.</li> <li>(3) Ensures that the reaction force is located to respond to the checkpoint and provide immediate assistance (lethal and nonlethal) if required.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>f. Establishes a safe zone.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE:</b> The safe zone is an assembly area for the checkpoint that allows personnel to rest, sleep, eat, and recover in relative security. Normally personnel should be rotated in and out of extended checkpoint operations but a safe zone is an essential requirement.</p> <p>8. The element maintains security. It takes the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Establishes a rest area for personnel near the search area so they can assemble quickly as a reserve force.</li> <li>b. Searches all vehicles and personnel for certain items (such as weapons, explosives, and contraband) as directed by the subordinate element leader.</li> <li>c. Positions sentries and patrols to prevent a possible ambush.</li> <li>d. Ensures that vehicle traffic, movement, and personnel are handled according to the established directives, SOP, and ROE.</li> <li>e. Stays alert to detect suspicious activity, vehicles, equipment, or personnel.</li> </ul> <p>9. The element reacts to hostile actions. It takes the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Fires warning shots (if authorized by the ROE) to deter the breach.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>b. Uses the minimum amount of force necessary to disarm infiltrating military or paramilitary forces.</p> <p>c. Attacks to disable all vehicles attempting to breach or flee.</p> <p>d. Destroys vehicles that initiate or return fires or persist in attempting a breach.</p> <p>10. The element moves the roadblock and/or checkpoint to keep the enemy off balance (when applicable and the mission dictates). It takes the following actions:</p> <p>a. Follows the SOP for moving the roadblock and/or checkpoint.</p> <p>b. Keeps all unnecessary and prepackaged roadblock and/or checkpoint equipment on the vehicles.</p> <p>c. Conducts rehearsals for setting up, taking down, and moving the roadblock and/or checkpoint.</p> <p>d. Conducts a detailed brief with the oncoming shift, including all incidents that may occur during the shift.</p> <p>e. Improves the roadblock and/or checkpoint and security positions as time and the situation permit.</p> <p>*11. The subordinate element leader maintains contact with the elements to ensure that each roadblock and/or checkpoint is operating properly.</p> <p>*12. The element leader continues to monitor the execution of the operation and forwards information to the element headquarters. He takes the following actions:</p> <p>a. Compiles information into the platoon situation overlay or digital system if available.</p> <p>b. Forwards situation reports and spot reports to the higher HQ.</p> <p>*13. The element leader plans for follow-on and future missions.</p> <p>* indicates a leader task step.</p>		

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
171-121-4045	Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures
191-377-4254	Search a Detainee
191-377-4256	Guard Detainees

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
17-2-4017	Conduct Target Acquisition (Platoon-Company)
17-2-9225	Conduct a Screen (Platoon-Company)
17-3-2605	Conduct a Defense

**SUPPORTING BATTLE/CREW DRILLS**

<b>Drill Number</b>	<b>Drill Title</b>
19-4-D0105	Establish a Hasty Checkpoint
05-3-D0016	Conduct the 5 Cs

**TASK:** Conduct Convoy Security (19-3-2007)

(FM 3-19.4)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is directed to conduct convoy security operations in its area of operations (AO). The element must be prepared to provide security for convoys that originate in its AO and/or convoys that will pass through. The element’s standing operating procedure (SOP) on convoy security is available. The unit has received guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE), rules of interaction (ROI), and escalation of force (EOF). Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture 4 (MOPP 4).

**STANDARDS:** The element conducts security for convoys in its AO and according to unit SOP, orders, and or commander’s guidance. The element’s security posture prevents hostile attempts to damage or destroy the convoys. The unit complied with the ROE, ROI, EOF, mission instructions, higher headquarters (HQ) orders, and other special orders; and provides updated information to higher HQ. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in MOPP 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*1. The element leader prepares to conduct convoy security operations by initiating troop-leading procedures. (071-410-0010)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducts an estimate of the situation.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Conducts a detailed mission analysis.</li> <li>(2) Includes time for understanding and restating the mission.</li> <li>(3) Uses the reverse-planning sequence to schedule troop-leading procedures.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Issues a warning order to all elements.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Includes a mission statement (who, what, where, when, and why).</li> <li>(2) Includes friendly and hostile situations.</li> <li>(3) Includes general and special instructions.</li> </ul> </li> <li>c. Makes a tentative plan.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Analyzes the mission using mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, civil considerations.</li> <li>(2) Compares courses of action.</li> </ul> </li> <li>d. Conducts a map reconnaissance of the convoy route and overlay.</li> </ul>		

**Chapter 2**

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>e. Directs the element to conduct a route reconnaissance.</p> <p>f. Completes the plan.</p> <p>(1) Coordinates with each unit whose AO the convoy will move through and determine friendly/supporting unit's locations (area of operations deconfliction).</p> <p>(2) Confirms communications call signs and frequencies, quick reaction force (QRF) contact information, casualty evacuation data, and current enemy situation.</p> <p>(3) Completes final coordinates with the convoy commander.</p> <p>g. Briefs higher headquarters and supporting agencies on the plan.</p> <p>h. Issues the plan to the element using a sketch, terrain model, or satellite imagery to assist in the briefing.</p> <p>i. Supervises precombat checks.</p> <p>(1) Conducts a spot check of weapons and mission-essential equipment.</p> <p>(2) Establishes communications with higher headquarters and elements within the formation.</p> <p>(3) Supervises rehearsals.</p> <p>2. The element conducts a hasty route reconnaissance (METT-TC-dependent).</p> <p>a. Collects information on current vehicle and pedestrian traffic.</p> <p>b. Plots the locations and characteristics of road obstructions.</p> <p>c. Determines the driving time and the distance between the pickup and release points.</p> <p>d. Locates potential ambush sites along the route and determines potential bypass or clearance so that fire support can be coordinated with higher headquarters.</p> <p>e. Prepares and submits reconnaissance information to the element leader.</p> <p>*3. The subordinate leader coordinates for Soldier and mission support requirements.</p> <p>a. Assists the element leader with planning.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>b. Inspects the escort element’s weapons and internal security measures to determine the combat power of the convoy.</p> <p>c. Requests Classes I, III, VIII, and IX supplies.</p> <p>d. Coordinates for medical evacuation.</p> <p>e. Coordinates vehicle recovery operations.</p> <p>f. Ensures that communications is established and maintained with subordinates and higher headquarters.</p> <p>*4. The subordinate leader finalizes the convoy security plan.</p> <p>a. Confirms pickup point with the releasing escort unit.</p> <p>b. Coordinates for host nation support.</p> <p>c. Verifies the frequencies and call signs of the escort unit.</p> <p>d. Prepares and loads mission data into digital equipment (such as Force XXI Battle Command-Brigade and Below (FBCB2/MTS, if available).</p> <p>e. Verifies the composition (number and type of vehicles) of the convoy and the order of march.</p> <p>f. Establishes checkpoints along the route.</p> <p>g. Plans local security for scheduled rest and refueling stops within the AO.</p> <p>h. Coordinates security support at critical points along the route, such as bridges, tunnels, key intersections, and sharp bends in the road.</p> <p>i. Determines alternate routes to bypass potential obstacles and enemy.</p> <p>j. Coordinates with the commander of the escorted unit to verify:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Actions to take in the event of enemy contact.</li> <li>(2) The vehicle speed.</li> <li>(3) The distance between vehicles.</li> <li>(4) Recovery plans.</li> <li>(5) Convoy rally points.</li> </ol> <p>k. Plans for scout element to be sent ahead of the convoy.</p> <p>l. Establishes rally points.</p> <p>m. Plans actions to take in case of non-hostile contact and/or interference (such as civilians).</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p><b>NOTE:</b> Nonlethal tactics and capabilities are always supported, held in reserve, or overwatched by lethal capabilities.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>n. Plans for a response force in the event of an enemy attack.</li> <li>o. Determines emergency actions to take during ambushes, air attacks, or artillery attacks (rehearse if possible).</li> <li>p. Verifies actions in case of a vehicle breakdown.</li> <li>q. Briefs the escort and security teams on the security plan.</li> <li>r. Briefs the convoy commander on security arrangements, convoy procedures, and actions on contact.</li> <li>s. Briefs the company commander on security arrangements.</li> <li>t. Adjusts the plan as needed based on the commander's guidance.</li> <li>u. Conducts a rehearsal.</li> </ul> <p>5. The element conducts the convoy security operation.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Sends advance scout elements ahead of the convoy, if available.</li> <li>b. Escorts the convoy.</li> <li>c. Maintains communications with the operations center.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Reports the time that the escort is due at the pickup point.</li> <li>(2) Reports passage times through checkpoints, phase lines, and battle space.</li> <li>(3) Reports times into and out of rest stops or refueling points.</li> <li>(4) Reports critical information, such as reports of enemy activity, vehicles that fall out of the convoy movement, or any activity that may interfere with movement.</li> <li>(5) Reports the time the convoy is released at the release point.</li> </ul> </li> <li>d. Provides security at halts.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Ensures that halts are taken only where there is a clear view of the entire escort column.</li> <li>(2) Assumes planned security positions.</li> </ul> </li> <li>e. Reacts to an attack or ambush.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(1) Does not enter the kill zone if not in the kill zone. If in the kill zone, immediately returns fire.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Personnel dismount vehicles only if vehicle(s) do not provide adequate protection, if vehicles have been disabled/destroyed, or when it is advantageous to place a higher volume of fire on the enemy. When dismounting, personnel should dismount vehicles on the opposite side from the attack, take cover behind their vehicles, and return fire.</p> <p>(2) Prevents other vehicles from entering the kill zone.</p> <p>(3) Uses fire and movement techniques. Lays down a heavy volume of fire on the attacking force and sweeps the area, depending on the situation.</p> <p>(4) Follows the rules of engagement and rules regarding the use of force.</p> <p>(5) Calls for indirect fire or air support as needed.</p> <p>(6) Calls for additional support, if needed.</p> <p>(7) Replaces key personnel as necessary (using existing personnel).</p> <p>(8) Conducts resupply or recovery activities as necessary.</p> <p>(9) Evacuates casualties and captured enemy personnel.</p> <p>(10) Continues the mission.</p> <p>*6. The element leader releases the convoy.</p> <p>a. Coordinates the release of the convoy with the receiving unit at the release point.</p> <p>b. Conducts an after-action review (AAR).</p> <p>c. Forwards a situation report to higher HQ.</p> <p>* indicates a leader task step.</p>		

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
071-410-0010	Conduct a Leader’s Reconnaissance
191-379-4407	Plan Convoy Security Operations
171-620-0016	Conduct Route Reconnaissance at Company-Troop Level

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
07-2-1342	Conduct Tactical Movement (Platoon-Company)
07-2-1450	Secure Routes (Platoon-Company)
07-2-5009	Conduct a Rehearsal (Platoon-Company)
07-2-5036	Conduct Coordination (Platoon-Company)
07-2-5081	Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures (Platoon-Company)
17-2-4000	Conduct Route Reconnaissance (Platoon-Company)

**SUPPORTING BATTLE/CREW DRILLS**

<b>Drill Number</b>	<b>Drill Title</b>
07-3-D9501	React to Contact (Visual, IED, Direct Fire [includes RPG])
07-3-D9503	React to Ambush (Far)

**TASK:**Secure Civilians During Operations (Platoon-Company) (07-2-4054)

(FM 3-21.10) (FM 3-21.8)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit conducts operations as part of a higher headquarters (HQ) and receives an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to secure civilians to protect them from injury due to combat. Some may be refugees and others may be inhabitants of the area in which the unit operates. Some may be openly hostile. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The unit communicates with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit has guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be conducted during limited visibility conditions and performed in mission-oriented protective posture 4 (MOPP 4).

**STANDARDS:** The unit secures civilians during operations according to the standing operating procedures (SOPs), the order, and or the higher commander’s guidance. The unit identifies and segregates combatants and noncombatants, and searches, safeguards, and moves them out of the immediate area of operations.

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO-GO</b>
<p>PLAN</p> <p>*1. Unit leaders gain and/or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources. Intelligence sources include company intelligence support team (CoIST), human intelligence (HUMINT), signal intelligence (SIGINT), and imagery intelligence (IMINT) to include unmanned aircraft systems (UASs) and unattended ground sensors (UGSs).</p> <p>*2. The unit leader receives an OPORD or a fragmentary order FRAGO directing unit to secure civilians. Unit leader issues a warning order (WARNO) to element leaders ensuring that subordinate leaders have sufficient time for their own planning and preparation needs. The WARNO must include:</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">a. Tentative unit organization for the securing of civilians.</p>		

**Chapter 2**

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>b. Location and tentative timeline of the operation, including movement times and no later than times for execution.</p> <p>c. Guidance directing the unit to conduct rehearsals; initiate movement; conduct reconnaissance tasks, and the commander's critical information requirement (CCIR).</p> <p>*3. Unit leaders conduct troop-leading procedures with emphasis on the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Interpreters to help interface with the local populace, if necessary.</li> <li>b. Control measures for expected or unexpected situations.</li> <li>c. Organization of the unit to accomplish the mission and/or compensate for combat losses.</li> </ul> <p>PREPARE</p> <p>*4. Unit leaders disseminate reports and overlays to each subordinate element to keep them abreast of the situation.</p> <p>*5. Unit leaders issue clear and concise tasking, orders, and instructions to include ROE.</p> <p>6. The unit conducts a rehearsal.</p> <p>EXECUTE</p> <p>7. Unit leaders or designated representatives supervise the operation. They take the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensure civilians are treated with respect.</li> <li>b. Ensure elements understand the ROE.</li> <li>c. Ensure elements/soldiers understand procedures for dealing with news media.</li> <li>d. Use FRAGOs as necessary to redirect actions of subordinate elements.</li> </ul> <p>8. Designated elements secure civilians. They take the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Maintain 360-degree and three-dimensional security in the AO in which civilians are gathered.</li> <li>b. Segregate civilians identified as being combatants or suspected war criminals and treat them like enemy prisoners of war (EPWs).</li> <li>c. Report the situation and status in a timely manner to higher HQ.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. Assign personnel to search civilians. (Keep identification papers with civilians under all circumstances, regardless of status.)</p> <p>e. Restrain and detain noncombatants who do not follow instructions, including:</p> <p>(1) Safeguard noncombatants and provide humane but firm treatment at all times.</p> <p>(2) Move noncombatants away from the immediate combat area and safeguard against hostile fire.</p> <p>f. Provide food, water, and medical attention based upon the medical ROE for civilian medical treatment.</p> <p>g. Assign guards to escort the civilians, including:</p> <p>(1) Evacuate civilians to a processing and or reception station or to an intermediate collection point run by higher HQ.</p> <p>(2) Ensure that guards escorting the civilians are prepared to give concise information to the processing/reception station or intermediate collection point about the original location of the civilians and their actions since being encountered (for example, reluctant, totally uncooperative, hostile).</p> <p>9. The unit gives proper consideration to the situation of the press and local officials.</p> <p>ASSESS</p> <p>10. The unit follows ROE guidance as to whether the local civilians and officials are to be considered friendly, hostile, or uncertain.</p> <p>11. The unit continues operations as directed.</p> <p>* indicates a leader task step.</p>		

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
171-121-4045	Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures
191-377-4254	Search a Detainee
191-377-4256	Guard Detainees

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
07-2-5009	Conduct a Rehearsal (Platoon-Company)

## Chapter 2

---

07-2-5063	Conduct Composite Risk Management (Platoon-Company)
07-2-6063	Maintain Operations Security (Platoon-Company)
08-2-0003	Treat Casualties
08-2-0004	Evacuate Casualties
19-3-3107	Process Detainee(s) at Point of Capture (POC)
07-2-5081	Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures (Platoon-Company)

### **SUPPORTING BATTLE/CREW DRILLS**

<b>Drill Number</b>	<b>Drill Title</b>
05-3-D0016	Conduct the 5 Cs

**TASK:** Integrate Indirect Fire Support (Platoon-Company) (07-2-3036)  
 (FM 3-21.10) (FM 3-21.8)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit conducts operations as part of a higher headquarters (HQ) and integrates fire support for the mission. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The unit has the battalion (BN) target list; communicates with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements; and has guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be conducted during limited visibility conditions and performed in mission-oriented protective posture 4 (MOPP 4).

**STANDARDS:** The unit plans and integrates fire support according to standing operating procedures (SOPs), the order, and/or higher commander's guidance. Unit leaders and/or the fire support team (FIST) determine the desired effect fires should have on the enemy. Unit leaders and/or the FIST plan, integrate, and coordinate indirect fires to support all phases of the operation. Unit leaders and/or forward observers (FOs) employ indirect fires using the correct "call for fire" format and procedures.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>PLAN</p> <p>*1. Unit leaders gain and/or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources. Intelligence sources include company intelligence support team (CoIST), human intelligence (HUMINT), signal intelligence (SIGINT), and imagery intelligence (IMINT) to include unmanned aircraft systems (UASs) and unattended ground sensors (UGSs).</p> <p>*2. Unit leaders confirm friendly and enemy situations. They take the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Receive an updated report showing the location of forward and adjacent friendly elements, if applicable.</li> <li>b. Receive an updated enemy situational template for added fratricide prevention and increased force protection, if applicable.</li> <li>c. Clarify priority intelligence requirements (PIRs).</li> <li>d. Confirm changes to the higher HQ and unit task or purpose.</li> <li>e. Confirm changes to the scheme of maneuver.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*3. Unit leaders perform a map reconnaissance. They take the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identify tentative target reference points (TRPs).</li> <li>b. Identify probable or known enemy locations.</li> </ul> <p>*4. Unit leaders and the FIST plan fire support. They take the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Determine desired effect on the enemy (suppress, isolate, obscure, neutralize, destroy, deceive, or disrupt).</li> <li>b. Plan priority of fires (should support the main effort).</li> <li>c. Identify priority targets.</li> <li>d. Plan close air support.</li> <li>e. Identify ammunition restrictions and controlled supply rate.</li> <li>f. Develop graphical fire control measures to include measures to initiate, lift, or shift fires.</li> <li>g. Confirm whether the use of smoke, scatterable mines, illumination, or dual purpose improved conventional munition is restricted and who controls them.</li> <li>h. Determine communications procedures to use when calling for fire.</li> <li>i. Determine when and under what circumstances to engage targets.</li> <li>j. Determine the method of engagement and method of control to be used.</li> <li>k. Develop the indirect fire plan at the same time as the offensive scheme of maneuver. Take the following actions:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Integrate direct fires and indirect fires to support maneuver throughout the operation.</li> <li>(2) Plan fires that support the commander's intent and scheme of maneuver.</li> <li>(3) Plan fires to support all phases of the attack.</li> <li>(4) Plan fires for targets of concern (targets that may deter the success of the maneuver).</li> <li>(5) Plan smoke to screen the unit when crossing a danger area, breaching an obstacle, or to obscure known or suspected enemy positions.</li> </ul> </li> <li>l. Develop the indirect fire plan to support the defensive scheme of maneuver. Take the following actions:</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(1) Plan fires that support the commander's intent.</p> <p>(2) Plan fires on all likely enemy positions and on areas the enemy may use in the attack, such as:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Observation posts (OPs).</li> <li>(b) Support positions.</li> <li>(c) Avenues of approach.</li> <li>(d) Assault positions.</li> <li>(e) Dead space.</li> <li>(f) Flanks.</li> <li>(g) Defiles.</li> </ul> <p>(3) Plan fires in front of, on top of, and behind friendly positions to stop likely penetrations or to support a counterattack.</p> <p>(4) Integrate final protective fires (FPFs) into the unit fire and obstacle plans.</p> <p>(5) Plan fires that cover planned or existing obstacles.</p> <p>(6) Plan smoke to screen friendly movements. (Defending units should use smoke sparingly.)</p> <p>(7) Plan illumination.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Unit leaders normally retain control of illumination in the defense.</p> <p>*5. Unit leaders and the FIST, if available, prepare for fire support execution. They take the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Prepare an observation plan. Take the following actions: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Designate primary and alternate observers.</li> <li>(2) Brief observers on target tasks and purposes.</li> <li>(3) Identify engagement area (EA).</li> <li>(4) Ensure observers are positioned to observe EA.</li> <li>(5) Consider available assets such as the laser range finders.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Prepare a trigger to initiate fires for each target. Take the following actions: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Include engagement criteria.</li> <li>(2) Prepare trigger lines based on the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Rate of travel by enemy forces to the engagement area.</li> <li>(b) Amount of time required to call for fires.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(c) Time of flight of the indirect fire rounds.                      (d) Clearance of fires at the unit and element level.                      (e) Possible adjustment times.                      c. Prepare a trigger for lifting or shifting fires. (For offensive operations, use a minimum safe line.)                      PREPARE                      6. The unit conducts a rehearsal. It takes the following actions:                          a. Involves observers in unit rehearsals.                          b. Ensures the unit's primary and alternate communications systems supports the fire support plan.                          c. Ensures precombat checks have been conducted on equipment according to the SOPs.                      *7. Unit leaders or designated representatives conduct a reconnaissance to confirm the indirect fire plan, if possible.                      *8. Unit leaders distribute the indirect fire support plan/execution matrix to subordinate leaders as a part of the OPORD. They take the following actions:                          a. Provide a copy of the fire plan to higher HQ.                          b. Incorporate the fire support plan into rehearsals.                      *9. Unit leaders use FRAGOs as necessary to redirect actions of subordinate elements.                      EXECUTE                      *10. Unit leaders or the FO employ indirect fire support using available communications. They take the following actions:                          a. Ensure all available supporting fires are executed in a timely manner and accomplish the prescribed result according to the fire plan and execution matrix.                          b. Ensure the employment of smoke does not degrade the unit mission.                          c. Adjust the priorities of fire as the battle progresses.                          d. Use the combat observation lasing team (COLT) when available.                          e. Call for fire, including:                              (1) Proper standardized call-for-fire (CFF) format.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(2) Proper radio communications procedures to call for fire.</p> <p>(3) Observer identification and warning order (adjust fire, fire for effect, suppress, or immediate suppression).</p> <p>(4) Target location methods (grid, polar, or shift from a known point).</p> <p>(5) Target description using size and/or shape, nature/nomenclature, activity, and protection/posture.</p> <p>(6) Various techniques for area adjustment, such as:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Successive bracketing.</li> <li>(b) One round adjustment.</li> <li>(c) Creeping fire.</li> </ul> <p>(7) Correct observer target factor and angular deviation.</p> <p>(8) Subsequent corrections.</p> <p>(9) Fire for effect when burst is within 50 meters.</p> <p>*11. Unit leaders or the FO conduct “fire for effect missions.” They take the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensure the impact of the adjustment rounds is close enough to have the desired effects with the first volley fired.</li> <li>b. Request appropriate shell/fuse combination.</li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE:</b> If desired effects are not achieved, the observer adjusts the rounds and repeats, changes shell/fuse combination, and requests additional fire for effect volleys.</p> <p><b>ASSESS</b></p> <p>*12. Unit leaders direct the observer to take the following actions if the desired effects are not achieved. The observer:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Adjusts the rounds and repeats.</li> <li>b. Changes the shell and or fuse combination.</li> <li>c. Requests additional fire for effect volleys.</li> </ul> <p>*13. Unit leaders or the FO conduct immediate suppression missions. They take the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identify the target (observer).</li> <li>b. Plot the target accurately.</li> <li>c. Transmit complete call for fire.</li> <li>d. Ensure an accurate target location is close enough to have the desired effects with the first volley fired.</li> </ul>		

**Chapter 2**

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>e. Ensure final suppression rounds are within 150 meters of the target (if necessary).</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> If desired effects are not achieved, the observer adjusts the rounds and repeats, changes shell/fuse combination, and requests additional fire for effect volleys.</p> <p>14. The FO observes munitions effects and reports battle damage assessments. He takes the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Estimates the extent of damage to the target and or casualties.</li> <li>b. Reports damage assessment to the fire direction center (FDC) providing fires.</li> </ul> <p>15. The FO, with laser locator, conducts a high burst and or mean point of impact registration (field artillery [FA] only), when directed. (The FDC transmits orienting data to observer.) He takes the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Orients using orienting data.</li> <li>b. Announces to FDC ready to observe.</li> <li>c. Lases the burst.</li> <li>d. Records and transmits burst location to FDC until FDC terminates registration.</li> </ul> <p>*16. Unit leaders or the FO register, confirm, and adjust a parallel sheaf for mortars. They take the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Use successive bracketing.</li> <li>b. Send appropriate corrections to FDC.</li> <li>c. Adjust sheaf to within a 50-meter range and a 40-meter lateral spread between rounds.</li> </ul> <p>* indicates a leader task step.</p>		

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS:**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
171-610-0001	Perform a Map Reconnaissance
061-284-3040	Engage Targets with Close Air Support
061-283-6003	Adjust indirect Fire

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
07-2-3027	Integrate Direct Fires (Platoon-Company)
07-2-5009	Conduct a Rehearsal (Platoon-Company)

07-2-5063	Conduct Composite Risk Management (Platoon-Company)
07-2-6063	Maintain Operations Security (Platoon-Company)

**SUPPORTING BATTLE/CREW DRILLS**

<b>Drill Number</b>	<b>Drill Title</b>
07-3-D9406	Knock Out Bunker
17-3-D8008	React to an Obstacle

## Chapter 2

---

**TASK:** Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Platoon-Company) (07-2-5027)

(FM 3-21.10)

(FM 3-21.8)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit conducts operations as part of a higher headquarters (HQ) and is in contact with the enemy. The unit must consolidate and reorganize. The unit communicates with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. Enemy forces have withdrawn to hasty defensive positions but have the capability to counterattack. The unit has guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protected posture 4 (MOPP 4).

**STANDARDS:** The unit consolidates and reorganizes according to the standing operating procedures (SOPs) and/or higher commander's guidance. The unit occupies a hasty fighting position with sectors of fire, establishes security, accounts for all personnel and equipment, and reestablishes the chain of command. Wounded in action (WIA) are identified, stabilized, and prepared for evacuation. Killed in action (KIA) are identified and prepared for evacuation. Ammunition and supplies are redistributed as needed.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>PLAN</p> <p>*1. Unit leaders gain and/or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources. Intelligence sources include company intelligence support team (CoIST), human intelligence (HUMINT), signal intelligence (SIGINT), and imagery intelligence (IMINT) to include unmanned aircraft systems (UASs) and unattended ground sensors (UGSs).</p> <p>*2. Unit leaders confirm friendly and enemy situations. They receive an updated:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>a. Report showing the location of forward and adjacent friendly elements.</li><li>b. Enemy situational template for added fratricide prevention and increased force protection.</li></ul> <p>*3. Unit leaders conduct troop-leading procedures.</p> <p>PREPARE</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*4. Unit leaders position the observation post (OP) forward to provide security. They ensure that:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Members are alert for a possible counterattack.</li> <li>b. The unit main body is not engaged without warning.</li> </ul> <p>EXECUTE</p> <p>5. The unit occupies hasty fighting positions near the objective. It takes the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Establishes local security, including:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Evaluates terrain thoroughly.</li> <li>(2) Positions the elements using the clock or the terrain feature technique.</li> <li>(3) Mans key weapons, as required by factors of mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, civil considerations (METT-TC).</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Destroys all organized resistance.</li> <li>c. Conducts reconnaissance of objective and/or area of operations (AO) to ensure it is free of enemy.</li> <li>d. Defends against enemy counterattacks.</li> <li>e. Begins decontamination operations, if required and as factors of METT-TC dictate.</li> <li>f. Establishes the chain of command.</li> <li>g. Establishes communications.</li> </ul> <p>*6. Unit leaders assign elements temporary sectors of fire.</p> <p>*7. Unit leaders ensure subordinate leaders adjust positions to cover likely avenues of approach and ensure mutual support between elements and adjacent units.</p> <p>*8. The unit secures enemy prisoners of war (EPWs).</p> <p>*9. Unit leaders report intelligence information of immediate value to next higher HQ.</p> <p>*10. Unit leaders supervise redistribution of ammunition and equipment.</p> <p>*11. Unit leaders provide ammunition, casualty, and equipment (ACE) reports to the headquarters.</p> <p>*12. Unit leaders coordinate resupply.</p> <p>*13. The unit treats and evacuates casualties.</p> <p>*14. The unit processes captured documents and/or equipment as required.</p> <p>ASSESS</p>		

## Chapter 2

---

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
*15. The unit continues operations as directed. *indicates a leader task step		

### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
171-121-4045	Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures
171-121-4038	Supervise Local Security
031-507-3014	Supervise Decontamination Procedures
113-571-1022	Perform Voice Communications
081-831-1058	Supervise Casualty Treatment and Evacuation
071-940-0002	Conduct Resupply of a Platoon
301-371-1200	Process Captured Materiel

### SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

Task Number	Task Title
07-2-6063	Maintain Operations Security (Platoon-Company)
07-3-9016	Establish an Observation Post
08-2-0003	Treat Casualties
08-2-0004	Evacuate Casualties
19-3-3107	Process Detainee(s) at Point of Capture (POC)

### SUPPORTING BATTLE/CREW DRILLS

Drill Number	Drill Title
05-3-D0016	Conduct the 5 Cs
07-3-D9507	Evacuate a Casualty (Dismounted and Mounted)

**TASK:**Conduct a Passage of Lines as the Passing Unit (Platoon-Company) (07-2-9006)

(FM 3-21.10) (FM 3-21.8)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit conducts operations as part of a larger force and receives an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct a forward or rearward passage of lines. The stationary unit has been identified. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. Indirect fire and close air support (CAS) are available. The unit has established communications with required units at all echelons. The unit has guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed under the conditions of: mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC) that aid or limit performance, or in mission-oriented protective posture 4 (MOPP 4).

**STANDARDS:** The unit conducts the passage of lines according to the standing operating procedures (SOPs), the order, and or higher commander's guidance. The unit completes necessary coordination with higher, adjacent, and stationary elements. The unit passes through the stationary unit with no compromise of security, and complies with the ROE, mission instructions, higher headquarters (HQ) order, and other special orders.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>PLAN</p> <p>*1. Unit leaders receive an OPORD or a FRAGO that requires the unit to conduct a passage of friendly lines and issue a warning order (WARNO) according to troop-leading procedures (TLPs) and unit SOPs. The WARNO must include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Location and tentative timeline for the passage of lines, including movement times and no later than time.</li> <li>b. Tentative unit organization during the passage of lines, identifying security and quartering parties as necessary.</li> <li>c. Guidance to conduct rehearsals and any initial movement, initiate surveillance and reconnaissance tasks, and ensure commander's critical information requirements (CCIRs).</li> </ul> <p>*2. Unit leaders develop a tentative plan according to the</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>TLPs. They take the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conduct mission analysis by using company intelligence support team (CoIST); focusing on METT-TC; taking advantage of maps, imagery; human intelligence (HUMINT); signal intelligence (SIGINT); unmanned aircraft systems (UASs); unattended ground sensors (UGSs); and other available capabilities.</li> <li>b. Develop a tentative course of action. Take the following actions:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Identify passage points and passage lanes (primary and alternate).</li> <li>(2) Identify likely enemy avenues of approach.</li> <li>(3) Identify security and support positions, if applicable.</li> <li>(4) Mark tentative dismount points on maps as appropriate.</li> <li>(5) Plan and coordinate indirect fire support and or close air support, if available.</li> <li>(6) Identify and assign direct fire responsibilities.</li> <li>(7) Organize the unit as necessary to accomplish the mission and or compensate for combat losses.</li> </ul> </li> <li>c. Develop contingency plans on chance contact with the enemy before, during, and after the passage, actions on break down of vehicles during passage, and casualty evacuation (CASEVAC) during the operation.</li> <li>d. Conduct risk management to identify, assess, develop, and implement controls for hazards and mitigate associated risks.</li> </ul> <p>*3. Unit leaders or designated representatives coordinate with the stationary unit and exchange and/or coordinate the following information:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Updated enemy situation.</li> <li>b. Friendly situation and disposition.</li> <li>c. Signal operating instructions information.</li> <li>d. Command post location.</li> <li>e. Contact points (primary, alternate).</li> <li>f. Number and type of personnel/vehicles involved in the passage.</li> <li>g. Estimated time of arrival of passing elements.</li> <li>h. Recognition signals.</li> <li>i. Verification and/or designation of fire coordination</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>measures.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>j. Verification of the command relationship with the stationary unit.</li> <li>k. Verification of known obstacle types and locations, and applicable breach locations, passage points, or bypass routes (friendly, existing, and enemy).</li> <li>l. Supporting fires information, to include available assets, smoke data, and target numbers and locations.</li> <li>m. Passage lanes data, to include alternate routes, start point, release point, passage points, and checkpoints.</li> <li>n. Location and number of guides and number and type of vehicles.</li> <li>o. Time of passage.</li> <li>p. Rally points (both near and far) and assembly areas.</li> <li>q. Line of departure.</li> <li>r. Battle handover line (BHL) and battle handover criteria for the transfer of responsibility for the control of the sector takes place, if applicable.</li> <li>s. Sustainment information, including the following:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Resupply of Classes III and V.</li> <li>(2) Medical evacuation assets.</li> <li>(3) Handling of enemy prisoners of war.</li> <li>(4) Maintenance requirements and available assets.</li> </ul> </li> <li>t. Action on contact if enemy is encountered during the passage.</li> <li>u. Verification of actions to take place following coordination of the passage.</li> </ul> <p>*4. Unit leaders or designated representatives complete coordination and preparations for the passage. They take the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conduct tactical movement back to the unit position, if applicable.</li> <li>b. Pass all pertinent information and/or FRAGO to the unit.</li> <li>c. Report all pertinent information from the coordination to the higher commander if acting as liaison for higher HQ.</li> <li>d. Direct subordinate element leaders to complete troop-leading procedures required to plan the passage.</li> </ul> <p>PREPARE</p> <p>*5. Unit leaders issue the OPORD and use FRAGOs as</p>		

**Chapter 2**

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>necessary to redirect actions of subordinate elements.</p> <p>6. The unit conducts a rehearsal.</p> <p>*7. Unit leaders coordinate/synchronize actions of subordinate elements.</p> <p>*8. Unit leaders use FRAGOs as needed to redirect actions of subordinate elements.</p> <p>EXECUTE</p> <p>9. The passing unit moves to an assembly area or an attack position</p> <p>10. Designated liaison personnel link up with guides and confirm coordination information with stationary unit.</p> <p>11. The unit conducts tactical movement to the passage point. It takes the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Establishes communications with stationary unit.</li> </ul> <p>Takes the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>b. Uses covered and concealed routes to the maximum extent possible.</li> <li>c. Uses best formation and movement technique based on factors of METT-TC.</li> <li>d. Maintains proper weapons orientation to ensure 360-degree security based on the formation selected.</li> <li>e. Can employ additional fire control measures to minimize the risk of fratricide.</li> </ul> <p>12. The unit moves through the passage point. It takes the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Keeps communications with stationary unit to a minimum.</li> <li>b. Displays designated recognition signal on all vehicles, if applicable.</li> <li>c. Reports arrival time at the passage point to higher HQ.</li> <li>d. Passes through the passage point without halting or blocking it.</li> </ul> <p>13. The unit moves along the passage lane. It takes the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Conducts tactical movement through the passage lane.</li> <li>b. Orients weapon systems in the direction of known or suspected enemy contact.</li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>c. Follows directions given by guides at traffic control points.</p> <p>d. Uses alternate lanes if situation dictates.</p> <p>*14. Unit leaders or representatives keep higher HQ informed. They take the following actions:</p> <p>a. Report graphic control measures for passage.</p> <p>b. Send situation report as needed during execution.</p> <p>c. Report completion of the passage.</p> <p>ASSESS</p> <p>15. If the passage is forward, the unit crosses the BHL and continues the mission.</p> <p>16. If the passage is rearward, the unit crosses the BHL and takes the specified following actions:</p> <p>a. Moves to the location designated in the OPORD without halting or blocking the passage lane.</p> <p>b. Occupies an assembly area or continues on assigned mission as specified in the OPORD.</p> <p>*indicates a leader task step.</p>		

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
07-2-5036	Conduct Coordination (Platoon-Company)
113-637-2001	Communicate Via a Tactical Radio in a Secure Net
052-192-3262	Prepare for an Improvised Explosive Device (IED) Threat Prior to Movement (Unclassified/For Official Use Only) (U//FOUO)
052-703-9107	Plan for an Improvised Explosive Device (IED) Threat in a COIN Environment (Unclassified/For Official Use Only) (U//FOUO)
052-192-1271	Identify Visual Indicators of an Improvised Explosive Device (IED) (Unclassified/For Official Use Only) (U//FOUO)
071-326-5505	Issue an Operation Order at the Company, Platoon, or Squad Level
071-326-5502	Issue a Fragmentary Order
071-329-1030	Navigate from One Point on the Ground to Another Point While Mounted
071-329-1006	Navigate from One Point on the Ground to another Point While Dismounted

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
07-2-1342	Conduct Tactical Movement (Platoon-Company)
07-2-5036	Conduct Coordination (Platoon-Company)
07-2-5081	Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures (Platoon-Company)
07-2-9005	Conduct a Linkup (Platoon-Company)
07-3-9013	Conduct Action on Contact

**SUPPORTING BATTLE/CREW DRILLS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
07-3-D9501	React to Contact (Visual IED, Direct Fire [includes RPG])
17-3-D8004	React to Air Attack

**TASK:** Conduct a Passage of Lines as the Stationary Unit (Platoon–Company) (07-2-9007)

(FM 3-21.10) (FM 3-21.8)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit conducts operations as part of a larger force and receives an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to pass another element through their lines. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. Indirect fire and close air support (CAS) are available. The unit has established communications with required units at all echelons and has guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Civilians, government agencies, nongovernment organizations, and local and international media may be in the area. Some iterations of this task should be performed under mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC) conditions that aid or limit performance. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture 4 (MOPP 4).

**STANDARDS:** The unit passes another element through their lines according to unit standing operating procedures (SOP), the order, and/or higher commander's guidance. The unit performs the necessary coordination/liaison with the passing element, designates and briefs guide personnel, passes another element through their lines, and conducts a battle/reconnaissance handover line (BHL/RHL). Unit complies with the ROE, mission instructions, higher headquarters order, and other special orders. Unit treats local inhabitants with respect.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
PLAN *1. Unit leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries; situation reports (SITREPs) and other available information sources. Intelligence sources include company intelligence support team (CoIST), human intelligence (HUMINT), signal intelligence (SIGINT), and imagery intelligence (IMINT) to include unmanned aircraft systems (UASs) and unattended ground sensors (UGSs). 2. Unit leaders receive an OPORD or FRAGO that requires their unit to pass a friendly unit through its lines and issue a warning order (WARNO) to the unit according to unit SOPs. The WARNO must include:		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>a. Tentative location and timeline for the passage of lines, including movement times and no later than time.</p> <p>b. Tentative unit organization during the passage of lines, over watch elements, and guides.</p> <p>c. Guidance directing the unit to conduct rehearsals and initiate any movement.</p> <p>*3. Unit leaders develop a tentative plan according to W the troop-leading procedures. They take the following actions:</p> <p>a. Conduct mission analysis focusing on the METT-TC; taking advantage of maps, imagery, HUMINT, SIGINT, unmanned aircraft UAS, UGS, and other available capabilities.</p> <p>b. Develop a tentative course of action. Take the following actions:</p> <p>(1) Identify passage point, if not specified by higher headquarters (HQ).</p> <p>(2) Identify contact points.</p> <p>(3) Identify an assembly area or attack position for staging of passing unit.</p> <p>(4) Develop direct and indirect fire responsibilities and control measures during conduct of the passage.</p> <p>c. Conduct risk management to identify, assess, develop, and implement controls for hazards and to mitigate associated risks.</p> <p>d. Organize as necessary to accomplish the mission and or compensate for combat losses.</p> <p>e. Coordinate with higher HQ and/or the passing unit. Take the following actions:</p> <p>(1) Obtain the following:</p> <p>(a) Location of passage point, if specified by higher HQ.</p> <p>(b) Signal operating instructions (SOI) information.</p> <p>(c) Passing unit designation.</p> <p>(d) Number/type of vehicles involved in the passage.</p> <p>(e) Estimated time of arrival of unit and time of passage.</p> <p>(f) Order of march.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(g) Recognition signals.</p> <p>(h) Guide requirements.</p> <p>(2) Provide the following as appropriate:</p> <p>(a) Friendly situation and or disposition.</p> <p>(b) Updated enemy situation.</p> <p>(c) Terrain analysis.</p> <p>(d) Supporting fires information to include available assets, smoke data, and target numbers and or locations.</p> <p>(e) Locations of friendly obstacles and applicable breaching information, to include any routes through obstacles.</p> <p>(f) Rally points and assembly area locations.</p> <p>(g) Location of the line of departure.</p> <p>(h) Location of the BHL/RHL and time the transfer of responsibility for the control of the sector will take place.</p> <p>(i) Friendly unit locations.</p> <p>(j) Information for resupply of Classes III and V.</p> <p>(k) Information for medical evacuation assets.</p> <p>(l) Information for handling of enemy prisoners of war.</p> <p>(m) Information for maintenance requirements and available assets.</p> <p>PREPARE</p> <p>*4. Unit leaders issue the OPORD and use FRAGOs as necessary to redirect actions of subordinate elements.</p> <p>5. Designated unit leadership briefs guide personnel on duties</p> <p>6. The unit conducts rehearsal.</p> <p>*7. Unit leaders issue FRAGOs, as needed, to address changes to the plan identified during the rehearsal.</p> <p>EXECUTE</p> <p>8. Guide personnel move to appropriate positions and begin activities to support the passage. They take the following actions:</p> <p>a. Establish overwatch positions.</p> <p>b. Reconnoiter and mark route for the passing unit.</p>		

**Chapter 2**

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>9. Guide personnel reconnoiter and open passage lane. They take the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Ensure lane provides adequate maneuver space for all passing unit vehicles/personnel.</li> <li>b. Assume positions to provide all-round defense for the passage.</li> </ul> <p>10. Guide personnel perform linkup with the passing unit and brief unit leaders as needed on the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Executes near and far recognition signals.</li> <li>b. Verifies restrictive fire line and BHL as necessary.</li> <li>c. Overwatches the passage and provides security as needed.</li> </ul> <p>11. The unit conducts physical linkup with passing element at the designated passage point and guides the passing unit through the passage lane to the release point.</p> <p>12. The unit conducts physical link-up with passing element at the designated passage point and guides the passing unit through the passage lane to the release point. (07-2-9005)</p> <p>ASSESS</p> <p>*13. The unit closes passage lane and any lanes through obstacles as required.</p> <p>14. Unit leaders report the completion of the passage to higher HQ.</p> <p>*indicates a leader task step.</p>		

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
071-410-0010	Conduct a Leader's Reconnaissance
071-326-5502	Issue a Fragmentary Order
071-331-0801	Challenge Persons entering Your Area
071-326-5505	Issue an Operation Order at the Company, Platoon, or Squad Level

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
07-2-1324	Conduct Area Security (Platoon-Company)
07-2-3000	Conduct Support by Fire (Platoon-Company)
07-2-5036	Conduct Coordination (Platoon-Company)
07-2-6063	Maintain Operations Security (Platoon-Company)

07-2-9005	Conduct a Linkup (Platoon-Company)
07-3-9013	Conduct Action on Contact
07-2-5081	Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures (Platoon-Company)

**SUPPORTING BATTLE/CREW DRILLS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
07-3-D9501	React to Contact (Visual IED, Direct Fire [includes RPG])

## Chapter 2

**TASK:** Conduct Logistics Package (LOGPAC) Support (63-2-4546)

(ADP 4-0)

(FM 5-19)

(ATP 4-11)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit receives an operations order (OPORD) and/or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct resupply operations upon the arrival of the logistics package (LOGPAC), or the commander determines that routine or emergency resupply is necessary. The unit has established communications with subordinate, adjacent and higher headquarters (HQ), and is passing information according to the tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP). The unit has been provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. This task is performed under all day and night environmental conditions. Threat capabilities cover a full spectrum to include information gathering; hostile force sympathizers; terrorist activities to include suicide bombings; and conventional, air supported, and reinforced squad operations in a chemical, biological, radiological, and nuclear (CBRN) environment. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective procedure 4 (MOPP 4).

**STANDARDS:** The unit requests supplies/services necessary to restore it to fully mission capable (FMC) status. It receives supplies and services as available and conducts distribution as needed to subordinate elements. The unit completes resupply operations within the time specified in the OPORD and/or FRAGO, or command guidance. The unit complies with ROE. No friendly unit suffers casualties or equipment damage as a result of fratricide.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*1. The executive officer (XO)/first sergeant (1SG) monitors supply status and reports status as required by unit tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP). (101-92A-4216)</p> <p>a. Compile accurate supply status (by class) from leaders of each platoon/section/element. Reports cover the following supply classes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>(1) Class I (Rations).</li><li>(2) Class II (Supplies and Equipment).</li><li>(3) Class III (Petroleum, Oil, and Lubricants [POL] products).</li><li>(4) Class IV (Construction/Barrier Materials).</li><li>(5) Class V (Ammunition).</li><li>(6) Class VI (Personnel Demand Items).</li><li>(7) Class VII (Major End Items).</li><li>(8) Class VIII (Medical Supplies).</li></ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(9) Class IX (Repair Parts).</p> <p>(10) Class X (Nonmilitary Program Materials such as agriculture and economic development).</p> <p>(11) Water.</p> <p>b. Submit consolidated logistical status (LOGSTAT) report through unit commander to higher HQ S-4 and/or forward support company (FSC)</p> <p>2. Unit reports personnel status to the higher HQ S-1 using personnel status (PERSTAT) report, requests replacements, and processes reassignment/ replacements.</p> <p>a. Platoon sergeants (PSGs) report personnel strength/losses (with battle roster numbers) to platoon/element leader and XO/1SG using PERSTAT.</p> <p>b. 1SG compiles report of personnel strength, losses, and battle roster changes and submits roll-up PERSTAT through the company commander to the higher HQ S-1.</p> <p>c. 1SG and PSGs reassign remaining personnel to ensure key positions are filled and critical weapons are manned.</p> <p>d. 1SG and PSGs assign replacements using the same criteria.</p> <p>e. Notifies s operations officer (SOO) when LOGPAC Operations vehicles are fully loaded and ready to move.</p> <p>f. Verifies that trail party is equipped to recover vehicles that develop maintenance problems during the combat resupply operations convoy.</p> <p>3. Unit reports vehicle status and requests resupply or other support as needed.</p> <p>a. PSGs and section leaders report vehicle and equipment status to include battle damage assessment (BDA), to platoon leaders and XO/1SG.</p> <p>b. PSGs and section leaders report maintenance, recovery, and evacuation support requirements to platoon leaders and XO/1SG.</p> <p>c. XO/1SG compiles platoon/section reports/requests and maintenance forecast and submits them to the higher HQ S-4 and/or supporting maintenance unit.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. They forward SP crossing report to HQ when unit elements have crossed the SP using FBCB2, MTS, or FM radio.</p> <p>e. They employ correct signal operating instructions/signal supplemental instructions (SOI/SSI) codes in all transmissions.</p> <p>f. They enforce march discipline using FBCB2, MTS, FM radio, or proper visual signals.</p> <p>*4. XO/1SG coordinate logistical package (LOGPAC) with higher HQ S-4 and/or forward support company (FSC) (191-379-4407). He takes the following actions:</p> <p>a. Verify status of resupply/support requests</p> <p>b. Coordinate actions at the logistics release point (LRP).</p> <p>c. Assume position(s) along march route that provides command presence at points of decision for reaction to changing tactical situation.</p> <p>d. Maintain situational awareness at all times using FBCB2 and MTS.</p> <p>e. Forward enroute CBRN information.</p> <p>f. Enforce all movement policies defined in the TSOP and movement order, with emphasis on formation, distances, speeds, passing procedures, and halts.</p> <p>g. Report all threat sightings using SALUTE (size activity location unit time equipment) Report format.</p> <p>h. Adjust formation distances and speed consistent with CBRN, terrain, and light conditions.</p> <p>i. Enforce security measures, with emphasis on air guards surveillance, manning of automatic weapons, and concealment of critical cargo.</p> <p>j. Inform vehicle operators by FBCB2, radio, MTS, or proper visual signals, any violations of march discipline, security procedures, or changes to established orders.</p> <p>k. Enforce communications security (COMSEC) measures to include radio silence periods according to the OPORD and SOI/SSI.</p> <p>5. The supply sergeant (under the supervision of the Headquarters and Headquarters Company [HHC] or FSC commander) assembles the LOGPAC. He takes the following actions:</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>a. Obtain requested supplies from FSC or higher HQ S-4.</p> <p>b. Obtain Class II, IV, VI, and VII supplies from higher HQ S-4 personnel.</p> <p>c. Consolidate replacement personnel and those returning from medical treatment.</p> <p>d. Consolidate vehicles returning from maintenance.</p> <p>e. Obtain mail from higher HQ S-1.</p> <p>f. Obtain personnel action documents from S1 section (to include award, finance, and legal documents).</p> <p>*6. 1SG/XO meets LOGPAC elements at the LRP. He takes the following actions:</p> <p>a. Move to the LRP and meets the supply sergeant and LOGPAC.</p> <p>b. Supervise actions at LRP as coordinated and/or specified by unit SOP.</p> <p>c. Occupy hasty defensive positions with 360-degree protective coverage (passengers).</p> <p>d. Report scheduled halt to HQ.</p> <p>e. Direct performance of preventive maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on vehicles.</p> <p>f. Inspect vehicle loads for safety and security.</p> <p>g. Begin departure at time specified by orders or designated by platoon leader.</p> <p>h. Report resumption of march to headquarters.</p> <p>*7. 1SG/XO coordinates unit resupply. He takes the following actions:</p> <p>a. Determine method of resupply (service station or tailgate).</p> <p>b. Determine location(s) of resupply</p> <p>c. Determine unit priority for resupply if all required supplies/services are not available.</p> <p>d. Determine unit order of resupply to include attachments.</p> <p>e. Execute LOGPAC operations according to TSOP or issues FRAGO notifying unit of changes to normal LOGPAC operations.</p> <p>f. Reports resumption of march to higher HQ.</p> <p>8. The unit receives service station resupply if applicable. The following actions are taken:</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>a. 1SG/XO escort LOGPAC move to designated resupply location along covered and concealed route.</p> <p>b. The unit security element conducts link-up with 1SG/XO and LOGPAC to organize resupply site, establishing security and use available cover and concealment.</p> <p>c. 1SG/XO issues FRAGO to PSGs and section sergeants on the organization of the resupply site, specific locations of medics, maintenance, supply points, mortuary affairs collection points and enemy prisoners of war (EPW) collection points.</p> <p>d. Support platoons/sections/elements conduct tactical movement to resupply site.</p> <p>e. Support platoons/sections/elements conduct appropriate actions of service station resupply as directed by the commander and/or unit SOP.</p> <p>*9. Convoy commander conducts night convoy. He takes the following actions:</p> <p>a. Brief drivers on night conditions.</p> <p>b. Provide visual adjustment period if march began during daylight.</p> <p>c. Prepare vehicles for blackout conditions according to the TSOP.</p> <p>d. Maintain prescribed interval between vehicles.</p> <p>e. Direct the wearing of night vision goggles (selected personnel).</p> <p>f. Direct the wearing of regular eye protection goggles (all other personnel).</p> <p>g. Enforce the use of ground guides during poor visibility periods.</p> <p>*10. Convoy commander conducts convoy through an urban area. He takes the following actions:</p> <p>a. Verify all weight, height, and width restrictions along route of march.</p> <p>b. Employ close column formation.</p> <p>c. Ensure that vehicle drivers obey traffic control directions unless escorted by military or host nation (HN) police.</p> <p>d. Employ directional guide's at all critical intersections.</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*11. The convoy commander coordinates/monitors actions at the designated LRP. He takes the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Verify that lead vehicle has arrived at the LRP.</li> <li>b. Verify that all vehicles have arrived at the LRP.</li> <li>c. Release unit serials to the supported unit's ISG or his/her designated represented representative.</li> <li>d. Direct unit serial reassembly at the LRP following unit resupply actions.</li> <li>e. Lead reassembled combat resupply operations convoy back to release point (RP) in the battalion field trains area.</li> <li>f. Ensure that all back haul logistics commodities arrive at the proper location.</li> <li>g. Forward situation report (SITREP) to headquarters using FBCB2, MTS, or radio.</li> </ul> <p>* indicates a leader task step.</p>		

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
101-92A-4216	Coordinate Logistical Requirements
191-379-4407	Plan Convoy Security Operations
101-92A-8030	Manage Unit Supply Operations

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
63-2-4519	Transport Supplies, Equipment, and Personnel
63-2-4000	Coordinate Replenishment/Sustainment Operations
07-2-5036	Conduct Coordination (Platoon-Company)

**SUPPORTING BATTLE/CREW DRILLS**

<b>Drill Number</b>	<b>Drill Title</b>
07-3-D9501	React to Contact (Visual, IED, Direct Fire [includes RPG])

## Chapter 2

---

**TASK:** Conduct Operational Decontamination (03-2-9224)

(FM 3-11.5)

(FM 3-11)

**CONDITIONS:** The element is operating in a contaminated environment. Performance degradation from mission-oriented protective posture 4 (MOPP 4) is increasing and protective gear is in danger of contamination. The time and tactical situation permit the element to conduct operational decontamination. Replacement protective gear is available for each Soldier. For a nonsupported decontamination, decontamination equipment and supplies are available and operational. For a supported decontamination, an operational decontamination unit is available and is tasked to provide decontamination support. This task is always performed in MOPP 4.

**STANDARDS:** The element decontaminates individual gear and conducts MOPP 4 gear exchange (using the buddy team, triple team, or individual (emergency) method) without sustaining additional casualties from chemical, biological, radiological, and nuclear (CBRN) contamination. The element limits the contamination transfer hazard by removing gross chemical contamination from equipment. The element reduces radiological contamination to negligible risk levels according to the element's tactical standing operating procedure (TSOP) and field manual (FM) guidance and/or reduces chemical and biological (CB) contamination to accelerate the weathering process and eventually provide temporary relief from MOPP 4.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*1. The element leader determines the extent of the contamination and establishes the priorities for decontamination. He takes the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>a. Receives input from subordinate leaders and staff.</li><li>b. Directs decontamination priorities.</li></ul> <p>2. The element submits a request for decontamination to higher headquarters (HQ). The request should include, as a minimum, the following:</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> Decontamination operations should be done between one and six hours after becoming contaminated.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>a. The designation of the contaminated element.</li><li>b. The location of the contaminated element.</li><li>c. The frequency and call sign of the contaminated element.</li></ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>d. The time that the element became contaminated.</p> <p>e. The number of personnel requiring a MOPP gear exchange.</p> <p>f. The number of vehicles and equipment (by type) that are contaminated.</p> <p>g. The type of contamination.</p> <p>h. Special requirements (such as a patient decontamination station, recovery assets, and an element decontamination team).</p> <p>3. The element coordinates with higher HQ. It takes the following actions:</p> <p>a. Obtains permission to conduct decontamination.</p> <p>b. Obtains the necessary support to conduct decontamination.</p> <p>c. Selects the link up point to meet supporting units (a company supply section, a company or battalion power-driven decontamination equipment [PDDE] crew, or a decontamination squad or platoon).</p> <p>d. Coordinates with supporting elements.</p> <p>e. Requests replacement MOPP gear.</p> <p>f. Coordinates with supporting units to determine if they need to exchange MOPP gear also.</p> <p>*4. The element leader and CBRN specialists select a site to conduct the operation and ensure that the selected site provides:</p> <p>a. Adequate overhead concealment.</p> <p>b. Good drainage.</p> <p>c. Easy access and exit routes (off the main routes).</p> <p>d. Close proximity to a water source large enough to support vehicle wash-down (plan for 100 gallons per vehicle).</p> <p>e. A large enough area to accommodate the elements involved in operational decontamination (110 square meters for both the vehicle wash-down site and the MOPP gear exchange site).</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>5. The element coordinates for operational decontamination support (a company or battalion PDDE crew or a decontamination unit). It takes the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Notifies higher HQ of the site selected for the operational decontamination.</li> <li>b. Establishes communications with the decontamination unit.</li> <li>c. Ensures that the decontamination unit knows the link up locations and the selected decontamination site.</li> </ul> <p>6. The element and supporting units move to the decontamination site. They take the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Meet at the link up point as coordinated.</li> <li>b. Provide security at the link up point and the decontamination site.</li> </ul> <p>7. The element prepares for operational decontamination. It takes the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Sets up the decontamination site. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) The supporting decontamination unit crew sets up a vehicle wash-down site.</li> <li>(2) The contaminated element sets up a MOPP gear exchange site no less than 50 meters upwind from the vehicle wash-down at a 45 degree angle.</li> <li>(3) The remainder of the element prepares its equipment for decontamination.</li> </ul> </li> <li>b. Conducts preparatory actions in the predecontamination marshalling area. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(1) Vehicle crews (except operators) dismount unless they have an operational overpressure system and an uncontaminated interior.</li> <li>(2) Dismounted crews remove mud and camouflage from vehicles.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p><b>NOTE:</b> The contaminated element provides personnel to do this when crews do not dismount.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(3) Separated vehicles and dismounted crews: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Ensure that vehicle operators are briefed (include the use of overhead cover and concealment and proper intervals).</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>(b) Ensure that vehicles are buttoned up (all doors, hatches, and other openings closed or covered to include muzzles).</p> <p>(4) Moves vehicles (with operators) to the vehicle wash-down site.</p> <p>(5) Moves dismounted crews and all other Soldiers in the contaminated element to the MOPP gear exchange site.</p> <p>*8. The noncommissioned officer in charge (NCOIC) of the decontamination unit supervises the operation of the vehicle wash-down site. He ensures that:</p> <p>a. Vehicle operators maintain proper intervals between vehicles while processing through the wash-down station.</p> <p>b. Decontamination crew washes vehicles properly.</p> <p>(1) Starts at the top and work down.</p> <p>(2) Sprays hot, soapy water for 2 to 4 minutes per vehicle.</p> <p>(3) Wears a toxicological agent-protective (TAP) or wet-weather gear over MOPP gear.</p> <p>(4) Monitors water consumption.</p> <p>c. Operators move to the MOPP gear exchange after vehicle has been washed down.</p> <p>d. Operators move to the assembly area.</p> <p>9. The contaminated element conducts MOPP gear exchange. It takes the following actions:</p> <p>a. Prepares the equipment decontamination station with super tropical bleach (STB) dry mix.</p> <p>b. Briefs MOPP gear exchange participants on the procedures to be followed.</p> <p>c. Places the decontaminated individual equipment on a clean surface (such as plastic, a poncho, or similar material).</p> <p>d. Exchanges MOPP gear using the buddy team, triple team or individual (emergency) method.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> The individual emergency method is used only when a person does not have a buddy to help and the risks of MOPP failure demands that an MOPP exchange occur.</p>		

<b>TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES</b>	<b>GO</b>	<b>NO-GO</b>
<p>e. Moves to the assembly area after they complete the MOPP gear exchange.</p> <p>10. Supporting elements process through the MOPP gear exchange site.</p> <p>11. The supporting decontamination element cleans and marks the site and reports the area of contamination using a nuclear, biological, chemical CBRN 5 report to higher HQ.</p> <p>*12. The element leader accounts for all personnel and equipment after completing the operational decontamination.</p> <p>*13. The element leader reports to higher HQ. He takes the following actions:</p> <p>a. Reports the completion of decontamination and the location of the vehicle wash-down and MOPP gear exchange decontamination sites.</p> <p>b. Requests permission to perform unmasking procedures if no hazards are detected through testing.</p> <p>c. Determines the adequacy of the decontamination and adjusts the MOPP level as required (after obtaining approval from higher HQ).</p> <p>14. The element continues its mission.</p> <p>* indicates a leader task step.</p>		

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
031-503-1019	React to Chemical or Biological (CB) Hazard/Attack
031-503-1021	Mark NBC Contaminated Area
031-503-1031	Use the Chemical Agent Monitor
031-503-1035	Protect Yourself from Chemical and Biological (CB)
	Contamination Using Your Assigned Protective Mask
031-503-1037	Detect Chemical Agents Using M8 or M9 Detector Paper
031-507-3014	Supervise Decontamination Procedures
113-571-1022	Perform Voice Communications
113-573-8006	Use an Automated Signal Operation Instruction (SOI)
551-721-1352	Perform Preventive Maintenance Checks

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
07-2-5009	Conduct a Rehearsal (Platoon-Company)
07-2-5063	Conduct Composite Risk Management (Platoon-Company)
07-2-5081	Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures (Platoon-Company)
07-2-6063	Maintain Operations Security (Platoon-Company)

**SUPPORTING BATTLE/CREW DRILLS**

<b>Drill Number</b>	<b>Drill Title</b>
07-3-D9483	React to Nuclear Attack
03-3-D0035	React to a Chemical Attack

## Chapter 2

---

**TASK:** Treat Casualties (08-2-0003)

(FM 4-25.11)

(AR 190-8)

(FM 4-02.7)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit has sustained casualties. The unit has medical treatment personnel and/or combat lifesavers. Threat force contact has been broken. Soldiers are wounded and may have chemical contamination or non-battle injuries. Unit personnel perform first aid (self-aid/buddy aid) treatment. The unit has analog and/or digital communications. A higher headquarters (HQ) operation order (OPORD) is available. Unit and higher HQ standing operating procedures (SOPs) are available. A treatment plan is available. This task is performed under all environmental conditions. The unit may be subject to attack by threat forces, including air; ground; chemical, biological, radiological, and nuclear (CBRN); or directed energy (DE) attack. Simplified collective protective equipment (SCPE) is on hand and/or field-expedient and natural shelters are available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture 4 (MOPP 4).

**STANDARDS:** Casualties are treated according to FM 4-25.11 and appropriate SOP(s). At MOPP 4 performance, degradation factors increase the time required to provide treatment and evacuation.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
*1. The commander and leaders supervise first aid treatment of casualties (081-831-1055, 113-571-1022, 113-600-2001, 113-637-2001, and 805C-PAD-2060). They take the following actions: a. Implement treatment plan. b. Monitor treatment to ensure all casualties are treated. c. Direct employment of combat lifesavers to treat casualties. d. Monitor battlefield stress reduction and prevention procedures. e. Report casualties, as required. f. Coordinate with higher HQ for additional medical support. g. Coordinate replenishment of Class VIII supplies with supporting medical element according to SOPs. h. Direct distribution of Class VIII supplies according to SOPs. i. Enforce quality control procedures for Class VIII items issued to unit elements.		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>2. Unit personnel perform first aid treatment (081-831-1003, 081-831-1005, 081-831-1007, 081-831-1008, 081-831-1025, 081-831-1026, 081-831-1032, 081-831-1033, 081-831-1034, 081-831-1044, 081-831-1045). They take the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Evaluate casualties.</li> <li>b. Administer life-saving first aid treatment (cardiopulmonary resuscitation), if required.</li> <li>c. Control hemorrhage.</li> <li>d. Dress wounds.</li> <li>e. Splint suspected fractures.</li> <li>f. Provide first aid treatment to casualties with burns.</li> <li>g. Provide first aid treatment for environmental injuries.</li> <li>h. Provide first aid treatment for chemical casualties.</li> <li>i. Prevent shock.</li> </ul> <p>3. Unit medical personnel/combat lifesavers perform enhanced first aid treatment (081-831-0038, 081-831-0039, 081-831-1003, 081-831-1005, 081-831-1007, 081-831-1008, 081-831-1044, 081-831-1045, 081-833-0033, 081-833-0047, 081-833-0092). They take the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Evaluate casualty for condition and type treatment needed.</li> <li>b. Measure casualty's vital signs.</li> <li>b. Initiate a field medical card.</li> <li>c. Insert oropharyngeal airway (J-Tube) in an unconscious casualty.</li> <li>d. Apply a splint to a fractured limb.</li> <li>e. Administer first aid to chemical agent casualties.</li> <li>f. Initiate an intravenous infusion for hypovolemic shock.</li> <li>g. Identify environmental injuries.</li> <li>h. Treat environmental injuries.</li> <li>i. Manage casualties with combat operational stress reactions.</li> </ul> <p>4. Unit medical personnel/combat lifesavers evacuate casualties to supporting medical element (081-831-0101, 081-831-1046, 081-833-0092). They take the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Prepare casualties for evacuation.</li> </ul>		

**Chapter 2**

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
b. Identify litter team(s). c. Construct improvised litter from available material, as required. d. Secure casualty on litter. e. Employ appropriate manual carry if litter is not available. f. Transport casualty without causing further injury according to SOPs. * indicates a leader task step.		

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
081-831-0038	Treat a Casualty for a Heat Injury
081-831-0039	Treat a Casualty for a Cold Injury
081-831-0101	Request Medical Evacuation
081-831-1003	Perform First Aid to Clear an Object Stuck in the Throat of a Conscious Casualty
081-831-1005	Perform First Aid to Prevent or Control Shock
081-831-1007	Perform First Aid for Burns
081-831-1008	Perform First Aid for Heat Injuries
081-831-1025	Perform First Aid for an Open Abdominal Wound
081-831-1026	Perform First Aid for an Open Chest Wound
081-831-1032	Perform First Aid for Bleeding of an Extremity
081-831-1033	Perform First Aid for an Open Head Wound
081-831-1034	Perform First Aid for a Suspected Fracture
081-831-1044	Perform First Aid for Nerve Agent Injury
081-831-1045	Perform First Aid for Cold Injuries
081-831-1046	Transport a Casualty
081-831-1055	Ensure Unit Combat Lifesaver Requirements Are Met
081-833-0033	Initiate an Intravenous Infusion
081-833-0047	Initiate Treatment for Hypovolemic Shock
081-833-0092	Transport a Casualty With a Suspected Spinal Injury
113-571-1022	Perform Voice Communications
113-600-2001	Communicate Via a Tactical Telephone
113-637-2001	Communicate Via a Tactical Radio in a Secure Net
805C-PAD-2060	Report Casualties

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
07-2-3000	Conduct Support by Fire (Platoon-Company)

07-3-3027	Integrate Direct Fires (Platoon-Company)
07-2-3036	Integrate Indirect Fire Support (Platoon-Company)
07-2-5009	Conduct a Rehearsal (Platoon-Company)
07-2-5027	Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Platoon-Company)
07-2-5063	Conduct Composite Risk Management (Platoon-Company)
07-2-6063	Maintain Operations Security (Platoon-Company)
07-2-9006	Conduct a Passage of Lines as the Passing Unit (Platoon-Company)
07-3-9013	Conduct an Action on Contact
07-3-9017	Conduct Actions at Danger Areas
08-2-0004	Evacuate Casualties
44-3-3220	Perform Passive Air Defense Measures
44-3-3221	Perform Active Air Defense Measures

**SUPPORTING BATTLE/CREW DRILLS**

<b>Drill Number</b>	<b>Drill Title</b>
07-3-D9507	Evacuate a Casualty (Dismounted and Mounted)

## Chapter 2

---

**TASK:** Evacuate Casualties (08-2-0004)

(FM 4-25.11) (AR 190-8) (AR 385-10) (AR 600-8-1)  
(FM 4-02) (FM 4-02.7) (TC 3-34.489)

**CONDITIONS:** Unit personnel are wounded and some may be chemically contaminated. Threat force contact has been broken. Unit defenses are reorganized and established. Casualties are evacuated from defensive positions to designated casualty collection points. Wounded enemy prisoners of war (EPW) casualties are evacuated to designated casualty collection points (CCPs) with appropriate security. The unit has analog and/or digital communications. Higher headquarters (HQ) operation order (OPORD) is available. Unit and higher HQ standing operating procedures (SOPs) are available. This task is performed under all environmental conditions. The unit may be subject to attack by threat forces, to include air; ground; chemical, biological, radiological, and nuclear (CBRN); or directed energy (DE) attack. Simplified collective protective equipment (SCPE) is on hand and/or field-expedient and natural shelters are available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture 4 (MOPP 4).

**STANDARDS:** Casualties are evacuated as soon as tactical situation permitted in according to FM 4-25.11, OPORD, appropriate SOP(s), and provisions of the Geneva Conventions. At MOPP 4, performance degradation factors increase the time required to evacuate casualties.

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
*1. The commander and leaders supervise evacuation of casualties (113-571-1022, 113-600-2001, 113-637-2001). They take the following actions: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>a. Monitor casualty evacuation operations for compliance with SOPs.</li><li>b. Identify casualty collection points.</li><li>c. Identify evacuation requirements.</li><li>d. Supervise preparation of casualties for evacuation.</li><li>e. Coordinate evacuation of casualties from unit area with the area defense command post (CP) according to SOPs.</li><li>f. Coordinate security requirements for the pick-up site with subelements and area defense CP.</li><li>g. Disseminate evacuation information to unit personnel.</li></ul>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>h. Forward casualty feeder report and witness statements to the area defense CP according to SOPs.</p> <p>2. Unit personnel prepare casualties for evacuation (101-92Y-0005, 113-571-1022, 113-600-2001, 113-637-2001, 805C-PAD-2060). They take the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Provide first aid treatment to casualties (08-2-0003).</li> <li>b. Report casualties, as required.</li> <li>c. Collect classified documents such as signal operation instructions/signal supplemental instructions (SOI/SSI), maps, overlays, and key lists.</li> <li>d. Secure custody of organizational equipment according to SOPs.</li> <li>e. Forward casualty feeder reports to unit HQ according to SOPs.</li> </ul> <p>3. Unit personnel evacuate casualties to casualty collection points using manual carries (081-831-1046). They take the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Select type of manual carry appropriate to situation and injury.</li> <li>b. Evacuate casualty without causing further injury.</li> </ul> <p>4. Unit personnel evacuate casualties to casualty collection points using litter carries (081-831-1046). They take the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Identify litter team(s).</li> <li>b. Construct improvised litter from available material, as required.</li> <li>c. Secure casualty on litter.</li> <li>d. Evacuate casualty without causing further injury.</li> </ul> <p>5. Unit personnel evacuate casualties to a medical treatment facility (MTF) using available vehicles (081-831-1046). They take the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Load maximum number of casualties.</li> <li>b. Secure casualties in vehicle.</li> <li>c. Evacuate casualties without causing further injury.</li> </ul>		

**Chapter 2**

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
<p>*6. The commander and leaders request aeromedical evacuation (081-831-0101, 113-571-1022, 113-600-2001, 113-637-2001, 301-371-1050). They take the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Transmit request according to OPORD and SOPs.</li> <li>b. Select landing site, which provides sufficient space for helicopter hover, landing, and take-off.</li> <li>c. Supervise removal of all dangerous objects likely to be blown about before aircraft arrival.</li> <li>d. Supervise security of landing site according to the SOPs.</li> <li>e. Ensure landing zone (LZ) is appropriately marked (light sets, smoke, and so forth) according to SOPs, if required.</li> </ul> <p>7. Unit personnel assist in loading ambulance (081-831-1046). They take the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Employ proper carrying and loading techniques.</li> <li>b. Load casualties in the sequence directed by crew.</li> <li>c. Load casualties without causing unnecessary discomfort.</li> <li>d. Employ safety procedures according to SOPs.</li> <li>e. Employ environmental protection procedures according to SOPs.</li> </ul> <p>8. Unit personnel evacuate chemically contaminated casualties (031-503-1035, 081-831-1046). They take the following actions:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Assume MOPP 4.</li> <li>b. Mark contaminated casualties according to SOPs.</li> <li>c. Notify supporting MTF that contaminated casualties are en route to their location.</li> <li>d. Evacuate casualties directly to a designated decontamination and treatment station.</li> <li>e. Protect casualties from further contamination during evacuation.</li> </ul> <p>9. Unit personnel evacuate EPW casualties (081-831-1046, 181-105-1001). They take the following actions:</p>		

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES	GO	NO-GO
a. Maintain security of EPW casualties according to SOPs. b. Search EPW casualties for weapons and ordnance before evacuation. c. Evacuate EPW casualties according to the provisions of the Geneva Conventions and SOPs. * indicates a leader task step		

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
031-503-1035	Protect Yourself From Chemical and Biological (CB) Contamination Using Your Assigned Protective Mask
081-831-0101	Request Medical Evacuation
081-831-1046	Transport a Casualty
101-92Y-0005	Enforce Compliance With Property Accountability Policies
113-571-1022	Perform Voice Communications
113-600-2001	Communicate Via a Tactical Telephone
113-637-2001	Communicate Via a Tactical Radio in a Secure Net
181-105-1001	Comply With the Law of War and the Geneva and Hague Conventions
301-371-1050	Implement Operations Security (OPSEC) Measures
805C-PAD-2060	Report Casualties

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
08-2-0003	Treat Casualties
08-2-0001	Conduct Battlefield Stress Reduction and Prevention Procedures

**SUPPORTING BATTLE/CREW DRILLS**

<b>Drill Number</b>	<b>Drill Title</b>
07-3-D9507	Evacuate a Casualty (Dismounted and Mounted)

**This page intentionally left blank.**

## Chapter 3

# Supporting Battle/Crew Drills

This chapter provides the platoon leader an example of the platoon collective tasks with supporting battle and or crew drills. Also provided are the drill T&EOs which can be used to train or evaluate a single drill. Several drill T&EOs may be used by an observer controller as an evaluation outline or by a platoon leader as a training outline.

### BATTLE/CREW DRILLS

3-1. The collective task to drill table (see Table 3-1) is an example developed by DOTD, MCoE. This table can be used by platoon leaders and unit leaders as an example to create their own unique collective task to drill crosswalk.

**Table 3-1. Collective task to drill table**

<b>METL Collective Task Number and Title</b>	
<i>Supporting Battle Drill Number and Title</i>	
<b>07-2-1090</b>	<b>Conduct a Movement to Contact (Platoon-Company)</b>
	<i>07-3-D9501 React to Contact (Visual, IED, Direct Fire [includes RPG])</i>
	<i>07-3-D9505 Break Contact</i>
	<i>17-3-D8008 React to an Obstacle</i>
<b>07-2-1256</b>	<b>Conduct an Attack by Fire (Platoon-Company)</b>
	<i>07-3-D9501 React to Contact (Visual, IED, Direct Fire [includes RPG])</i>
	<i>17-3-D8008 React to an Obstacle</i>
<b>07-2-1324</b>	<b>Conduct Area Security (Platoon-Company)</b>
	<i>07-3-D9501 React to Contact (Visual, IED, Direct Fire [includes RPG])</i>
	<i>05-3-D0017 React to an IED Attack While Maintaining Movement</i>
	<i>19-4-D0105 Establish a Hasty Checkpoint</i>

**Table 3-1. Collective task to drill table (continued)**

<b>METL Collective Task Number and Title</b>	
<i>Supporting Battle Drill Number and Title</i>	
<b>07-2-1450</b>	<b>Secure Routes (Platoon-Company)</b>
	<i>17-3-D8008 React to an Obstacle</i>
	<i>07-3-D9505 Break Contact</i>
	<i>05-3-D0016 Conduct the 5 Cs</i>
<b>07-2-3000</b>	<b>Conduct Support by Fire (Platoon-Company)</b>
	<i>07-3-D9501 React to Contact (Visual, IED, Direct Fire [includes RPG])</i>
	<i>07-3-D9504 React to Indirect Fire</i>
<b>07-2-3036</b>	<b>Integrate Indirect Fire Support (Platoon-Company)</b>
	<i>07-3-D9406 Knock Out Bunker</i>
	<i>17-3-D8008 React to an Obstacle</i>
<b>07-2-4054</b>	<b>Secure Civilians during Operations(Platoon-Company)</b>
	<i>05-3-D0016 Conduct the 5 Cs</i>
<b>07-2-5027</b>	<b>Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization</b>
	<i>05-3-D0016 Conduct the 5 Cs</i>
	<i>07-3-D9507 Evacuate a Casualty (Dismounted and Mounted)</i>
<b>07-2-9001</b>	<b>Conduct an Attack (Platoon-Company)</b>
	<i>07-3-D9501 React to Contact (Visual, IED, Direct Fire [includes RPG])</i>
	<i>07-3-D9410 Enter a Trench to Secure a Foothold</i>
	<i>07-3-D9412 Breach of a Mined Wire Obstacle</i>
<b>07-2-9002</b>	<b>Conduct a Bypass (Platoon-Company)</b>
	<i>17-3-D8008 React to an Obstacle</i>
	<i>07-3-D9505 Break Contact</i>
	<i>05-3-D0016 Conduct the 5 Cs</i>
<b>07-2-9003</b>	<b>Conduct a Defense (Platoon-Company)</b>
	<i>07-3-D9501 React to Contact (Visual, IED, Direct Fire [includes RPG])</i>

Table 3-1. Collective task to drill table (continued)

<b>METL Collective Task Number and Title</b>	
	<i>Supporting Battle Drill Number and Title</i>
	<i>17-3-D8004 React to Air Attack</i>
<b>07-2-9004</b>	<b>Conduct a Delay (Platoon-Company)</b>
	<i>07-3-D9501 React to Contact (Visual, IED, Direct Fire [includes RPG])</i>
	<i>07-3-D9504 React to Indirect Fire</i>
<b>07-2-9006</b>	<b>Conduct Passage of Lines as Passing Unit (Platoon-Company)</b>
	<i>07-3-D9501 React to Contact (Visual, IED, Direct Fire [includes RPG])</i>
	<i>17-3-D8004 React to Air Attack Drill</i>
<b>07-2-9007</b>	<b>Conduct Passage of Lines as Stationary Unit (Platoon-Company)</b>
	<i>07-3-D9501 React to Contact (Visual, IED, Direct Fire [includes RPG])</i>
<b>07-2-9009</b>	<b>Conduct a Withdrawal (Platoon-Company)</b>
	<i>07-3-D9501 React to Contact (Visual, IED, Direct Fire [includes RPG])</i>
	<i>07-3-D9504 React to Indirect Fire</i>
	<i>07-3-D9505 Break Contact</i>
<b>07-2-9012</b>	<b>Conduct a Relief in Place (Platoon-Company)</b>
	<i>07-3-D9501 React to Contact (Visual, IED, Direct Fire [includes RPG])</i>
	<i>05-3-D0016 Conduct the 5 Cs</i>
<b>08-2-0003</b>	<b>Treat Casualties</b>
	<i>07-3-D9507 Evacuate a Casualty (Dismounted and Mounted)</i>
<b>08-2-0004</b>	<b>Evacuate Casualties</b>
	<i>07-3-D9507 Evacuate a Casualty (Dismounted and Mounted)</i>

**Table 3-1. Collective task to drill table (continued)**

<b>METL Collective Task Number and Title</b>	
<i>Supporting Battle Drill Number and Title</i>	
<b>17-2-4000</b>	<b>Conduct Route Reconnaissance (Platoon-Company)</b>
	<i>07-3-D9501 React to Contact (Visual, IED, Direct Fire [includes RPG])</i>
<b>17-2-4010</b>	<b>Conduct Zone Reconnaissance (Platoon-Company)</b>
	<i>07-3-D9503 React to Ambush (Far)</i>
	<i>05-3-D0016 Conduct the 5 Cs</i>
	<i>07-3-D9501 React to Contact (Visual, IED, Direct Fire [includes RPG])</i>
	<i>07-3-D9503 React to Ambush (Far)</i>
	<i>05-3-D0016 Conduct the 5 Cs</i>
<b>17-2-4011</b>	<b>Conduct Area Reconnaissance (Platoon-Company)</b>
	<i>07-3-D9501 React to Contact (Visual, IED, Direct Fire [includes RPG])</i>
	<i>05-3-D0016 Conduct the 5 Cs</i>
<b>17-2-9225</b>	<b>Conduct a Screen (Platoon-Company)</b>
	<i>07-3-D9504 React to Indirect Fire</i>
	<i>05-3-D0016 Conduct the 5 Cs</i>
<b>19-3-2007</b>	<b>Conduct Convoy Security</b>
	<i>07-3-D9501 React to Contact (Visual, IED, Direct Fire [includes RPG])</i>
	<i>07-3-D9503 React to Ambush (Far)</i>
<b>19-3-2406</b>	<b>Conduct Roadblock and Checkpoint</b>
	<i>19-4-D0105 Establish a Hasty Checkpoint</i>
	<i>05-3-D0016 Conduct the 5 Cs</i>
<b>63-2-4546</b>	<b>Conduct Logistics Package (LOGPAC) Support</b>
	<i>07-3-D9501 React to Contact (Visual, IED, Direct Fire [includes RPG])</i>

Table 3-1. Collective task to drill table (continued)

<b>METL Collective Task Number and Title</b>	
<i>Supporting Battle Drill Number and Title</i>	
<b>03-2-9224</b>	<b>Conduct Operational Decontamination</b>
	<i>07-3-D9483 React to Nuclear Attack</i>
	<i>03-3-D0035 React to a Chemical Attack</i>
<b>07-2-9008</b>	<b>Conduct a Raid (Platoon-Company)</b>
	<i>07-3-D9501 React to Contact (Visual, IED, Direct Fire [includes RPG])</i>
	<i>07-3-D9502 React to Ambush (Near)</i>
<b>07-2-1495</b>	<b>Conduct an Air Assault (Platoon-Company)</b>
	<i>17-3-D8008 React to an Obstacle</i>
	<i>07-3-D9505 Break Contact</i>
	<i>05-3-D0016 Conduct the 5 Cs</i>
<b>07-3-9018</b>	<b>Enter and Clear a Building (Section-Platoon)</b>
	<i>07-4-D9509 Enter and Clear a Room</i>
	<i>07-3-D9501 React to Contact (Visual, IED, Direct Fire [includes RPG])</i>
<b>17-2-3070</b>	<b>Breach an Obstacle (Platoon-Company)</b>
	<i>17-3-D8008 React to an Obstacle</i>
	<i>07-3-D9412 Breach of a Mined Wire Obstacle</i>

3-2. The drills shown in the example matrix found in Table 3-1 are displayed using the T&EO outline format. For more information on other drills the platoon may be expected to perform, see DTMS.

**TASK:** React to Contact (Visual, IED, Direct Fire [includes RPG]) (07-3-D9501)

**CONDITIONS:** Visual (dismounted/mounted). The unit is stationary or moves, conducting operations. Visual contact is made with the enemy. Mounted. The unit is stationary or moves, conducting operations. Visual contact is made with the enemy. Improvised explosive device (IED) (dismounted/mounted). The unit is stationary or moves, conducting operations. The unit identifies and confirms an IED or one is detonated. Direct fire dismounted/mounted. The unit is stationary or moves, conducting operations. The enemy initiates contact with a direct fire weapon.

**CUE:** This drill begins when visual contact, direct fire, or an IED is identified or detonated.

**STANDARDS:** Visual (dismounted). The unit destroys the enemy with a hasty ambush or an immediate assault through the enemy position. Visual (mounted). Based on the composition of the mounted unit, the unit either suppresses and reports the enemy position and continues its mission, or suppresses the enemy position for a follow-on assault to destroy them. IED (dismounted/mounted). The unit takes immediate action by using the 5Cs procedure (confirm, clear, call, cordon, check, and control). Direct fire (dismounted/mounted). The unit immediately returns well-aimed fire and seeks cover. The unit leader reports the contact to higher headquarters (HQ).

### **TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

1. Visual dismounted.
  - a. Hasty ambush. Unit leaders take the following actions:
    - (1) Determine that the unit has not been seen by the enemy.
    - (2) Signal Soldiers to occupy best available firing positions.
    - (3) Initiate the ambush with the most casualty-producing weapon available, immediately followed by a sustained well-aimed volume of effective fire.
    - (4) If the unit is prematurely detected, the Soldier(s) aware of the detection initiates the ambush.
    - (5) Ensure the unit destroys the enemy or forces them to withdraw.
    - (6) Report the contact to higher HQ.
  - b. Immediate assault.
    - (1) The unit and the enemy simultaneously detect each other at close range.

### TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES

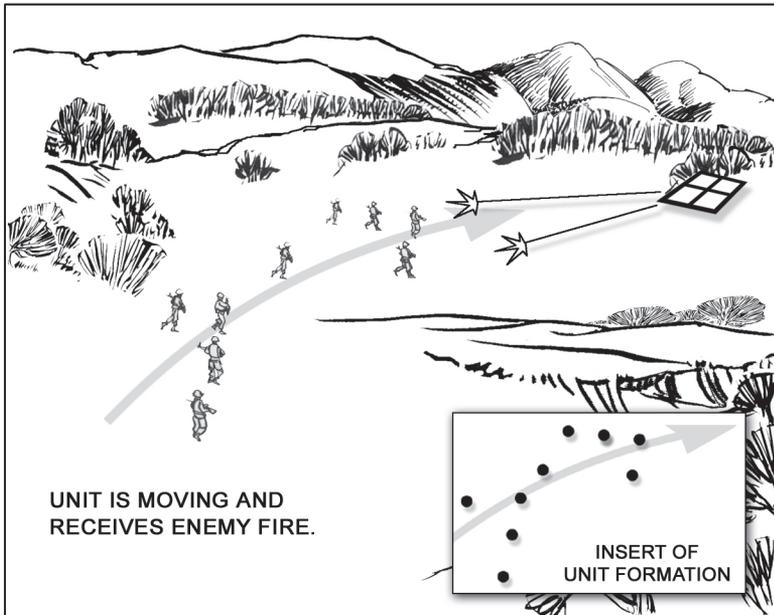
- (2) All soldiers who see the enemy engage and announce “contact” with a clock direction and distance to enemy, (example, “contact three o’clock, 100 meters”). Unit personnel take the following actions:
  - (3) Elements in contact immediately assault the enemy using fire and movement.
  - (4) The unit destroys the enemy or forces them to withdraw
  - (5) The unit leader reports the contact to higher headquarters.
2. Visual mounted. Unit personnel take the following actions:
  - a. The Soldier who spots the enemy announces the contact.
  - b. The element in contact immediately suppresses the enemy.
  - c. The vehicle commander of the vehicle in contact sends contact report over the radio.
  - d. The unit maneuvers on the enemy or continues to move.
  - e. Vehicle gunners fix and suppress the enemy positions.
  - f. The unit leader reports the contact to higher HQ.
3. IED dismounted/mounted. Unit personnel take the following actions:
  - a. React to a suspected or known IED prior to detonation by using the 5Cs.
  - b. Unit determines if there is a requirement for explosive ordnance disposal (EOD), while maintaining as safe a distance as possible and 360 security, Unit “confirms” the presence of an IED by using all available optics to identify any wires, antennas, detcord, or parts of exposed ordnance. Take the following actions:
    - (1) Conduct surveillance from a safe distance.
    - (2) Observe the immediate surroundings for suspicious activities.
    - (3) Requests EOD if the need is determined.
  - c. Unit “clears” all personnel from the area a safe distance to protect them from a potential second IED.
  - d. Unit “cordons” off the area, directs personnel out of the danger area, prevents all military or civilian traffic from passing and allows entry only to authorized personnel. They take the following actions:
    - (1) Direct people out of the 300-meter minimum danger area.
    - (2) Identify and clears an area for an incident control point (ICP).
    - (3) Occupy positions and continuously secure the area.
  - e. Unit “checks” the immediate area for secondary/tertiary devices around the incident control point (ICP) and cordon using the 5/25 meter checks.
  - f. Unit “controls” the area inside the cordon to ensure only authorized access

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

g. Unit continuously scans the area for suspicious activity. They take the following actions:

- (1) Identify potential enemy observation, vantage, or ambush points.
- (2) Maintain visual observation on the IED to ensure the device is not tampered with.

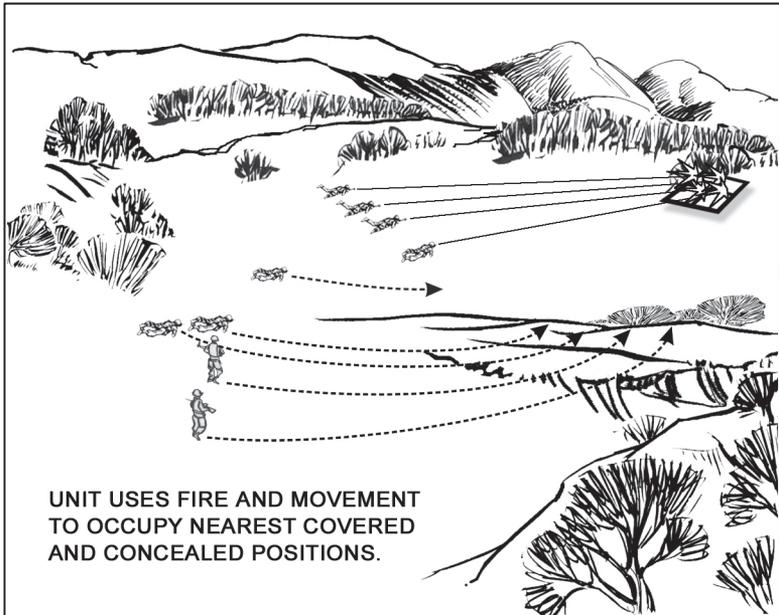
4. Direct fire dismantled. (See Figure 1.) Unit personnel take the following actions:



**Figure 1. React to contact, direct fire (dismounted)**

a. Soldiers under direct fire immediately return fire and seek the nearest covered positions. They call out distance and direction of direct fire. (See Figure 2.)

## TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES

**Figure 2. React to contact, direct fire (dismounted)**

b. Element leaders locate and engage known or suspected enemy positions with well-aimed fire and pass information to the unit leader.

c. Element leaders control their Soldier's fire by:

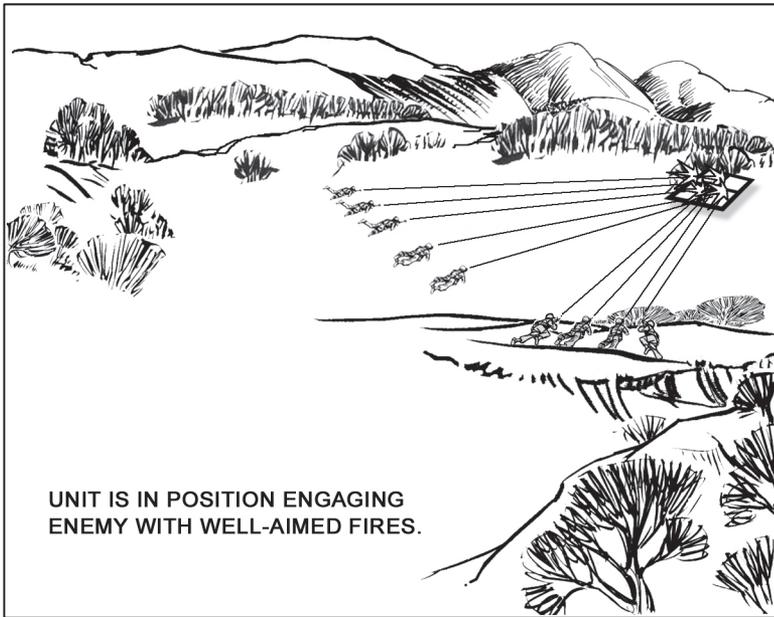
(1) Marking targets with lasers.

(2) Marking the intended target with tracers or M203 rounds.

d. Soldiers maintain contact (visually or orally) with the Soldiers on their left or right.

e. Soldiers maintain contact with their team leader and relay the location of enemy positions. (See Figure 3.)

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**



**Figure 3. React to contact, direct fire (dismounted)**

- f. Element leaders (visually or orally) check the status of their Soldiers.
- g. Element leaders maintain contact with the unit leader.
- h. Unit leader reports the contact to higher headquarters.
- 5. Direct fire mounted. Unit personnel take the following actions:
  - a. If moving as part of a logistics patrol, vehicle gunners immediately suppress enemy positions and continue to move.
  - b. Vehicle commanders direct their drivers to accelerate safely through the engagement area.
  - c. If moving as part of a combat patrol, vehicle gunners suppress and fix the enemy allowing others to maneuver against and destroy the enemy.
  - d. Leaders (visually or orally) check the status of their Soldiers and vehicles.
  - e. Unit leader reports the contact to higher HQ.

**SUPPORTING PRODUCTS**

<b>Product ID</b>	<b>Product Name</b>
<u>FM 3-21.8</u>	The Infantry Rifle Platoon and Squad
FM 3-21.75	Warrior Ethos and Soldier Combat Skills

## SUPPORTING PRODUCTS

<b>Product ID</b>	<b>Product Name</b>
ATTP 3-21.9	SBCT Infantry Rifle Platoon and Squad

## SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
071-030-0004	Engage Targets with an MK 19 Grenade Machine Gun
071-054-0004	Engage Targets with an M136 Launcher
071-325-4407	Employ Hand Grenades
071-311-2130	Engage Targets with an M203 Grenade Launcher
071-010-0006	Engage Targets with an M249 Machine Gun
071-025-0007	Engage Targets with an M240B Machine Gun
071-100-0030	Engage Targets with an M16-Series Rifle/M4-Series Carbine
071-326-0502	Move Under Direct Fire
071-326-5611	Conduct the Maneuver of a Squad
071-326-5630	Conduct Movement Techniques by a Platoon
071-121-4080	Send a Spot Report (SPOTREP)
061-283-1011	Engage Targets with Indirect Fires
113-571-1022	Perform Voice Communications

## SUPPORTED COLLECTIVE TASKS

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
07-2-1090	Conduct a Movement to Contact (Platoon-Company)
07-2-1450	Secure Routes (Platoon-Company)
07-2-9002	Conduct a Bypass (Platoon-Company)
07-2-9009	Conduct a Withdrawal (Platoon-Company)

**TASK:** Break Contact (07-3-D9505)

**CONDITIONS:** (Dismounted/Mounted) - The unit is stationary or moving, conducting operations. All or part of the unit is receiving enemy direct fire.

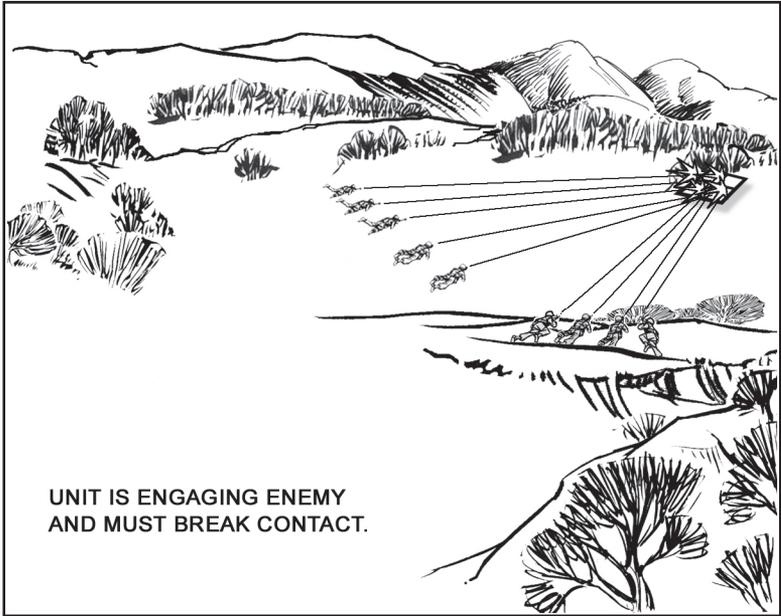
**CUE:** The unit leader initiates drill by giving the order, BREAK CONTACT.

**STANDARDS:** (Dismounted/Mounted) - The unit returns fire. A leader identifies the enemy as a superior force, and makes the decision to break contact. The unit breaks contact using fire and movement. The unit continues to move until the enemy cannot observe or place effective fire on them. The unit leader reports the contact to higher headquarters (HQ).

### TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES

1. Dismounted–
  - a. The unit leader designates an element to suppress the enemy with direct fire as the base-of-fire element.
  - b. The unit leader orders distance, direction, a terrain feature, or last rally point for the movement of the first element.
  - c. The unit leader calls for and adjusts indirect fire to suppress the enemy positions.
  - d. The base-of-fire element continues to suppress the enemy. (See Figure 1.)

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

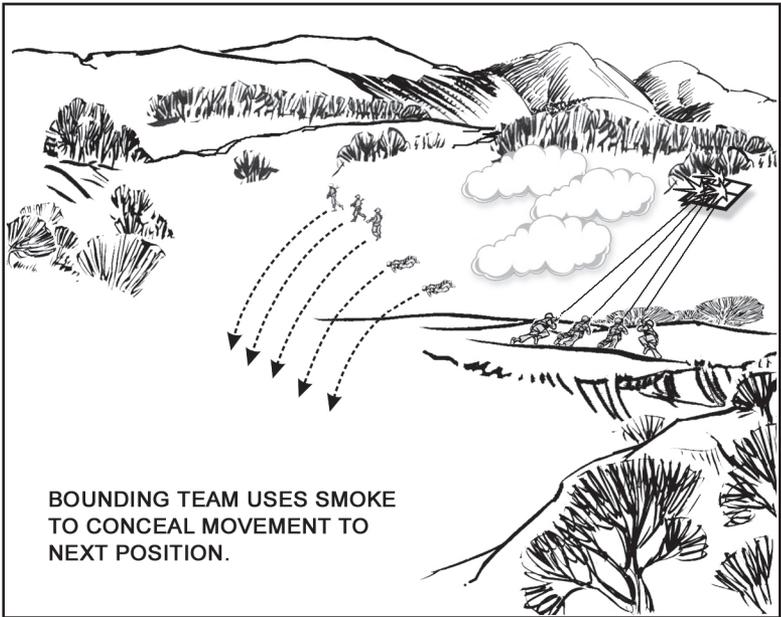


**Figure 1. Break contact (dismounted)**

e. The bounding element uses the terrain and/or smoke to conceal its movement and bounds to an overwatch position.

f. The bounding element occupies their overwatch position and suppresses the enemy with "well-aimed fire." (See Figure 2.)

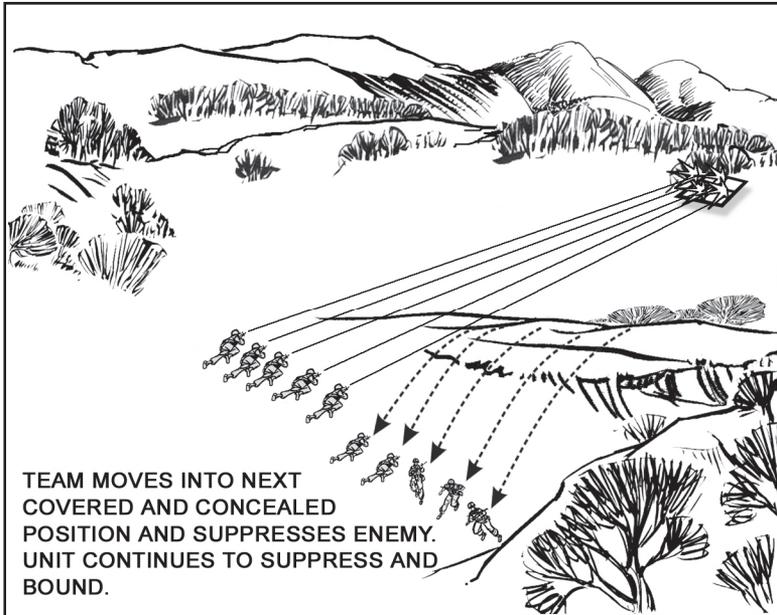
TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES



**Figure 2. Break contact (dismounted) (continued)**

g. The base-of-fire element moves to its next covered and concealed position. (Based on the terrain and volume and accuracy of the enemy's fire, the moving element may need to use fire and movement techniques). (See Figure 3.)

## TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES



**Figure 3. Break contact (dismounted) (continued)**

h. The unit continues to suppress the enemy and bound until it is no longer in contact with enemy.

i. The unit leader reports the contact to higher headquarters.

2. Mounted—

a. The unit leader directs the vehicles in contact to place "well-aimed" suppressive fire on the enemy positions.

b. The unit leader orders distance, direction, a terrain feature, or last objective rally point over the radio for the movement of the first section.

c. The unit leader calls for and adjusts indirect fire to suppress the enemy positions.

d. Gunners in the base-of-fire vehicles continue to engage the enemy. They attempt to gain fire superiority to support the bound of the moving section.

e. The bounding section moves to assume the overwatch position.

(1) The section uses the terrain and/or smoke to mask movement.

(2) Vehicle gunners and mounted Soldiers continue to suppress the enemy.

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

- f. The unit continues to suppress the enemy and bounds until it is no longer receiving enemy fire.
- g. The unit leader reports the contact to higher HQ.

**SUPPORTING PRODUCTS**

<b>Product ID</b>	<b>Product Name</b>
<u>FM 3-21.8</u>	The Infantry Rifle Platoon and Squad
FM 3-21.75	Warrior Ethos and Soldier Combat Skills
ATTP 3-21.9	SBCT Infantry Rifle Platoon and Squad

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
071-030-0004	Engage Targets with an MK 19 Grenade Machine Gun
071-054-0004	Engage Targets with an M136 Launcher
071-325-4407	Employ Hand Grenades
071-311-2130	Engage Targets with an M203 Grenade Launcher
071-010-0006	Engage Targets with an M249 Machine Gun
071-025-0007	Engage Targets with an M240B Machine Gun
071-100-0030	Engage Targets with an M16-Series Rifle/M4-Series Carbine
071-326-0502	Move Under Direct Fire
071-326-5611	Conduct the Maneuver of a Squad
071-326-5630	Conduct Movement Techniques by a Platoon
071-121-4080	Send a Spot Report (SPOTREP)
061-283-1011	Engage Targets with Indirect Fires
113-571-1022	Perform Voice Communications

**SUPPORTED COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
07-2-1090	Conduct a Movement to Contact (Platoon-Company)
07-2-1450	Secure Routes (Platoon-Company)
07-2-9002	Conduct a Bypass (Platoon-Company)
07-2-9009	Conduct a Withdrawal (Platoon-Company)

**TASK:** React to an Obstacle (17-3-D8008)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon is conducting tactical operations as part of a higher unit and has communication with the commander. The platoon or a section/squad makes contact with an obstacle. The platoon may or may not have countermine equipment. Enemy contact is possible. Some iterations of this task should be conducted in mission-oriented protective posture 4 (MOPP 4) and under conditions of limited visibility.

**CUE:** Any Soldier gives an oral or visual signal they are in contact with an obstacle.

**STANDARDS:** The platoon identifies the obstacle, deploys as applicable to avoid decisive engagement of the entire platoon, and alerts the higher unit of obstacle contact and location. Once the obstacle is breached or bypassed, the platoon remains prepared to continue the unit mission. No friendly unit suffers casualties or equipment damage as a result of fratricide.

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

1. If applicable, section identifying the obstacle alerts the platoon with a contact report.
2. In close direct fire contact situations, platoon takes immediate protective actions.
  - a. The platoon leader (PL) directs the platoon to deploy to a covered and concealed location.
  - b. As applicable, element in contact employs onboard smoke grenades and direct fire to obscure and suppress the enemy forces overwatching the obstacle.
3. In out of contact situations (platoon identifies obstacle from a position of advantage), platoon takes immediate protective actions.
  - a. PL directs the platoon to deploy to a covered and concealed location.
  - b. Element in visual contact with obstacle establishes an overwatch position.
  - c. As applicable, employs direct fire and/or indirect fire to obscure and suppress the enemy forces overwatching the obstacle.
4. PL/platoon sergeant takes actions to develop the situation and report to the commander.
  - a. Sends contact report to higher commander.
  - b. Develops the situation by section/squad (maneuver) to determine location, composition, and disposition of enemy forces overwatching the obstacle.

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

(1) Directs one section/squad to establish a suitable overwatch position to allow platoon to continue to develop the situation.

(2) Directs the other section/squad to perform reconnaissance of the obstacle to determine composition of the obstacle and to locate a bypass.

**NOTE:** Reconnaissance may be performed mounted or dismounted.

c. Sends obstacle report to higher commander describing type, width, length, effect, and location of the obstacle.

d. Sends updated situation reports to the commander as necessary.

5. If a bypass is possible, PL reports the location of the bypass to the higher commander and recommends bypassing the obstacle.

**NOTE:** Once ordered to bypass, the platoon executes steps to bypass the obstacle. (Refer to task 07-2-9002, Conduct a Bypass) (Platoon-Company)

6. If a bypass is not possible, PL reports to higher commander and recommends, based on obstacle composition, a point of breach and either platoon-level reduction or a higher-level breach.

**NOTE:** If ordered to reduce the obstacle, the platoon executes steps of breach force operations. (Refer to task 17-2-3070, Breach an Obstacle [Platoon-Company])

**SUPPORTING PRODUCTS**

<b>Product ID</b>	<b>Product Name</b>
<u>FM 3-20.15</u>	Tank Platoon
FM 3-90.1	Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
171-121-3009	Control Techniques of Movement
171-121-4009	Conduct Scout Platoon Actions on Contact
171-121-4010	Conduct Tank Platoon Actions on Contact
171-121-4017	Supervise Tank Platoon Formations and Drills
171-121-4038	Supervise Local Security
171-121-4045	Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures
171-121-4059	Conduct an Armor in-Stride Breach of a Minefield
171-121-4068	Conduct a Reconnaissance by Fire
071-100-0030	Engage Targets with an M16-Series Rifle/M4-Series Carbine
071-325-4407	Employ Hand Grenades
071-326-0501	Move as a Member of a Fire Team

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
071-326-0608	Use Visual Signaling Techniques
071-326-0503	Move Over, Through, or Around Obstacles (Except Minefields)

**SUPPORTED COLLECTIVE TASK**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
07-2-1090	Conduct a Movement to Contact (Platoon-Company)
17-2-3070	Breach an Obstacle (Platoon-Company)
17-2-4000	Conduct Route Reconnaissance (Platoon-Company)

**TASK:** React to an IED Attack While Maintaining Movement (05-3-D0017)

**CONDITIONS:** The element conducts a mounted military operation when an improvised explosive device (IED) detonates.

**CUE:** An IED detonates within casualty-producing radius on the patrol, resulting in varying degrees of battle damage to the vehicles, equipment, and personnel.

**STANDARDS:** The element reacts to the IED attack by performing 5/25 meter checks. They use the 5Cs (confirm, clear, cordon, check, and control) to suppress enemy fire, set up security, evacuate casualties, recover disabled vehicles, submit an explosive hazards spot report, and exit the area.

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

Unit personnel take the following actions:

1. Report the IED attack to the patrol (any Soldier can do this using the 3Ds: distance, direction, and description).
2. Establish 360-degree local security by directing the element to focus outward from the attack site.
3. If necessary, direct the element to the rally point based upon mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC) factors.
4. Employ tactical combat casualty care measures.
5. Evacuate casualties.
6. Conduct consolidation and reorganization at the rally point.
7. Direct element members to report the status of liquid, ammunition, casualties, and equipment (LACE) report.

**SUPPORTING PRODUCTS**

**Product ID**

FM 3-21.75  
ATTP 3-21.9

**Product Name**

Warrior Ethos and Soldier Combat Skills  
SBCT Infantry Rifle Platoon and Squad

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

**Task Number**

071-030-0004  
071-054-0004  
071-325-4407  
071-311-2130  
071-010-0006  
071-025-0007

**Task Title**

Engage Targets with an MK 19 Grenade Machine Gun  
Engage Targets with an M136 Launcher  
Employ Hand Grenades  
Engage Targets with an M203 Grenade Launcher  
Engage Targets with an M249 Machine Gun  
Engage Targets with an M240B Machine Gun

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
071-100-0030	Engage Targets with an M16-Series Rifle/M4-Series Carbine
071-326-0502	Move Under Direct Fire
071-326-5611	Conduct the Maneuver of a Squad
071-326-5630	Conduct Movement Techniques by a Platoon
071-121-4080	Send a Spot Report (SPOTREP)
061-283-1011	Engage Targets with Indirect Fires
113-571-1022	Perform Voice Communications

**SUPPORTED COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
07-2-1090	Conduct a Movement to Contact (Platoon-Company)
07-2-1450	Secure Routes (Platoon-Company)
07-2-9002	Conduct a Bypass (Platoon-Company)
07-2-9009	Conduct a Withdrawal (Platoon-Company)

**TASK:** Establish a Hasty Checkpoint (19-4-D0105)

**CONDITIONS:** The element receives an order from higher headquarters (HQ) to immediately establish a hasty checkpoint (CP) at a specific location in its area of operations (AO). The local police or security forces may assist with the operations. The unit receives guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE), rules of interaction (ROI), and escalation of force (EOF). Translators or host-nation personnel are attached or available. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture 4 (MOPP 4).

**CUE:** This drill begins when the element leader receives the order from higher HQ and issues the command to the element to immediately establish a hasty checkpoint (CP) at a specified location, or the element leader directs his personnel to conduct this drill.

**STANDARDS:** The element takes immediate action to construct and establish a hasty CP according to orders from higher HQ. The checkpoint controls vehicular and pedestrian traffic by limiting entry to and exit from the specified area. The element is briefed on the ROE, ROI, and EOF, mission instructions, higher HQ order, and other special orders. The time required to perform this task is increased when conducting it in MOPP 4.

### TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES

1. The element leader receives and issues orders to element to immediately establish a hasty CP at a specific location. He takes the following actions:

**NOTE:** Establish a hasty CP when the CP will be used for a set period of time, usually a short duration. Hasty CPs should be located as to achieve the element of surprise and cannot be seen by approaching traffic until it is too late to withdraw. Good locations for hasty CPs are bridges, defiles, highway intersections, reverse slopes of hills, and just beyond sharp curves.

a. Issues directives and assignments to personnel to immediately set up and construct key elements of a hasty CP. The key elements are:

- (1) Establish security.
- (2) Establish security positions or occupy sentry positions.
- (3) Establish communication.
- (4) Construct an entry point.
- (5) Construct approach lanes and protective barriers.
- (6) Construct search and holding areas.
- (7) Establish lethal and non-lethal (weapons) overwatch positions.
- (8) Post warning signs.
- (9) Final operations briefing and instructions (prior to activating the

CP).

### TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES

- b. Issues time-line for establishing the checkpoint.
- 2. Element members immediately perform their assigned duties to establish or construct the hasty CP to prepare it for operation (based on the element leader's instructions). They take the following actions:

**NOTE:** Security, hasty defensive positions, and establishing commo must be completed first. The remaining hasty CP construction duties and responsibilities are not required to be performed in sequence and can be completed simultaneously by various element members to speed up the process.

- a. Establish security during the construction of the hasty checkpoint.
- b. Construct hasty defensive positions (all members).
- c. Establish communications with all elements and higher HQ.
- d. Establish an initial (stand-off) visual search area or zone (only if mission dictates or allows) that is clearly marked with signs for vehicles and/or pedestrians to stop and wait for further instructions prior to approaching the actual CP entrance.

**NOTE:** The initial search zone is a distant visual search area where vehicles and personnel will be ordered (by visual or audio means) to stop at a clearly marked point before they actually enter the CP. This process may allow for the detection of weapons and explosives at a safe distance or cause a person to reveal their intent. Personnel and vehicles can be visually inspected from a predetermined distance (approximately 25 to 100 meters or as the mission dictates) while CP operators remain behind a protective barrier or vehicle. Personnel are ordered to exit their vehicle, open their vehicle compartments that can be observed from a distance (trunk, hood, and so forth), uncover or take out items from their vehicle, open or pull up their overgarments, turn around, and perform any other additional measures according to the SOP. This visual search is conducted prior to bringing personnel and vehicles into the checkpoint for a detailed search. Local support authorities can be used for this area. The initial search zone is more applicable to a deliberate CP but can be used for a hasty CP if the mission allows and threat dictates its use.

- e. Construct entry points that can restrict and control the entry of vehicles and/or pedestrians into the hasty CP. Entry point should also provide minimal protection for CP personnel if needed.

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

**NOTE:** Hasty CP approach lanes, entry point, protective barriers, holding areas, and search areas can be constructed utilizing readily available materials such as engineer tape, debris, trees, rocks, concertina wire, existing structures, and all other available equipment/material. The element should also use existing culverts, bridges, deep cuts, sharp bends, or dips in the road to create the hasty checkpoint. Ensure that there is adequate lighting for night operations (if applicable).

f. Create or construct approach (canalization) and deceleration lanes that force traffic to slow down, and directs vehicles and/or pedestrians to the designated areas. This can be done with a system of curves and obstacles vehicles must maneuver around as they approach the CP.

g. Establish or construct holding areas for detained persons away from checkpoint entrance.

**NOTE:** The holding and search areas are relatively secure areas where personnel and vehicles are positively identified and a complete detailed search is conducted. Existing structures, vehicles or obstacles are used to isolate vehicles or individuals from others with overwatch protection from weapon positions. Mission may require male and female members to conduct personnel searches (female soldiers should conduct searches of female personnel entering the CP).

h. Establish or construct detailed search areas for personnel (male and female) and vehicles.

i. Establish lethal and nonlethal overwatch positions where they can observe all areas and approach areas. Crew served weapons will be strategically placed at these locations.

j. Ensure warning signs are posted.

**NOTE:** Warning or instructional signs should be posted in the native and English languages in the CP area. Signs should be placed at key locations and distances leading up to CP. Signs should also specify when deadly force is authorized for failure to comply with posted warnings (based on the current SOPs, orders, ROE, and EOF).

3. The element leader conducts final briefing, after hasty CP is established, and makes notification to HQ. He takes the following actions:

a. Briefs personnel on key elements of conducting hasty CP operations (prior to putting the CP into operation). The key elements are:

(1) Current ROE, EOF, and ROI.

(2) Rules regarding search, detention, standoff distances, and the use of force.

(3) Actions on contact (mounted and dismounted threats).

(4) Procedures for clearing and processing personnel and vehicles through the CP according to orders and guidance from higher HQ.

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

(5) Utilizing all available assets and procedures the mission allows to conduct CP operations safely (stand-off distance, obstacles, barriers, and warning signs).

(6) Searching for high risk and prohibited items (such as weapons, explosives, and contraband).

(7) Maintaining security and overwatch support of CP.

(8) Ensuring vehicle traffic, movement, and personnel are handled according to current directives and SOPs.

b. Notifies higher HQ that the hasty CP is established and ready for operations.

**SUPPORTING PRODUCTS**

<b>Product ID</b>	<b>Product Name</b>
<u>FM 3-21.75</u>	Warrior Ethos and Soldier Combat Skills

**SUPPORTED INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
081-831-0101	Request Medical Evacuation
081-831-1003	Perform First Aid to Clear an Object Stuck in the Throat of a Conscious Casualty
081-831-1005	Perform First Aid to Prevent or Control Shock
081-831-1007	Perform First Aid for Burns
081-831-1025	Perform First Aid for an Open Abdominal Wound
081-831-1026	Perform First Aid for an Open Chest Wound
081-831-1032	Perform First Aid for Bleeding and/or Severed Extremity
081-831-1033	Perform First Aid for an Open Head Wound
081-831-1034	Perform First Aid for a Suspected Fracture
081-831-1046	Transport a Casualty
113-571-1022	Perform Voice Communications
805C-PAD-2060	Report Casualties

**SUPPORTED COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
07-2-5027	Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Platoon-Company)
08-2-0003	Treat Casualties
08-2-0004	Evacuate Casualties

**TASK:** Conduct the 5 Cs (05-3-D0016)

**CONDITIONS:** The element conducts a mounted or dismounted military patrol when an improvised explosive device (IED) is identified or detonates.

**CUE:** This is done when a possible or suspected IED is identified, an explosive device is detonated, or while conducting a security halt (mounted or dismounted).

**STANDARDS:** The element conducts the 5Cs (confirm, clear, cordon, check, control) correctly, ensuring the area is clear of any nonessential personnel, secondary or tertiary IEDs have been confirmed and identified, a cordon has been established, and personnel access to the area is under control.

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

**NOTE:** Conduct the 5C's; these are not order specific and can be done concurrently.

1. Confirms there is a requirement for explosive ordnance disposal (EOD) when encountering a suspected or known IED.
2. Clears all personnel from the area to a tactically safe position and distance from the potential IED.
3. Cordons the area.
4. Checks the immediate area for secondary/tertiary devices around the incident control point (ICP) and cordon using the 5/25 meter checks.
5. Controls the area inside the cordon to ensure only authorized access.

**DANGER**  
**MINIMUM SAFE DISTANCE FOR EXPOSED**  
**PERSONNEL IN THE OPEN IS 300 METERS.**

**SUPPORTING PRODUCTS**

**Product ID**  
FM 3-21.75

**Product Name**  
Warrior Ethos and Soldier Combat Skills

**SUPPORTED INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
081-831-0101	Request Medical Evacuation
081-831-1003	Perform First Aid to Clear an Object Stuck in the Throat of a Conscious Casualty
081-831-1005	Perform First Aid to Prevent or Control Shock
081-831-1007	Perform First Aid for Burns
081-831-1025	Perform First Aid for an Open Abdominal Wound
081-831-1026	Perform First Aid for an Open Chest Wound
081-831-1032	Perform First Aid for Bleeding and/or Severed Extremity
081-831-1033	Perform First Aid for an Open Head Wound
081-831-1034	Perform First Aid for a Suspected Fracture
081-831-1046	Transport a Casualty
113-571-1022	Perform Voice Communications
805C-PAD-2060	Report Casualties

**SUPPORTED COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
07-2-5027	Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Platoon-Company)
08-2-0003	Treat Casualties
08-2-0004	Evacuate Casualties

**TASK:** React to Indirect Fire (07-3-D9504)

### **CONDITIONS:**

**Dismounted.** The unit moves, conducting operations. Any Soldier gives the alert, INCOMING, or a round impacts nearby.

**Mounted.** The platoon/section is stationary or moves, conducting operations. The alert, INCOMING, comes over the radio or intercom or rounds impact nearby.

**CUE:** This drill begins when any member alerts, INCOMING, or a round impacts.

### **STANDARDS:**

**Dismounted.** Soldiers immediately seek the best available cover. The unit moves out of area to the designated rally point after the impacts.

**Mounted.** When moving, drivers immediately move their vehicles out of the impact area in the direction and distance ordered. If stationary, drivers start their vehicles and move in the direction and distance ordered. Unit leaders report the contact to higher headquarters (HQ).

### **TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

1. **Dismounted.** Unit personnel take the following actions:
  - a. Any Soldier announces, INCOMING!
  - b. Soldiers immediately assume the prone position or move to immediate available cover during initial impacts.
  - c. The unit leader orders the unit to move to a rally point by giving a direction and distance.
  - d. After the impacts, Soldiers move rapidly in the direction and distance to the designated rally point.
  - e. The unit leaders report the contact to higher HQ.
2. **Mounted.** Unit personnel take the following actions:
  - a. Any Soldier announces, INCOMING!
  - b. Vehicle commanders repeat the alert over the radio.
  - c. The leaders give the direction and link-up location over the radio.
  - d. Soldiers close all hatches if applicable to the vehicle type; gunners stay below turret shields or get down into vehicle.
  - e. Drivers move rapidly out of the impact area in the direction ordered by the leader.
  - f. Unit leaders report the contact to higher HQ.

### SUPPORTING PRODUCTS

<b>Product ID</b>	<b>Product Name</b>
<u>FM 3-21.8</u>	The Infantry Rifle Platoon and Squad
FM 3-21.75	Warrior Ethos and Soldier Combat Skills
ATTP 3-21.9	SBCT Infantry Rifle Platoon and Squad

### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
071-326-3002	React to Indirect Fire While Mounted
113-571-1022	Perform Voice Communications

### SUPPORTED COLLECTIVE TASKS

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
07-2-3000	Conduct Support by Fire (Platoon-Company)
07-2-9004	Conduct a Delay (Platoon-Company)
07-2-9009	Conduct a Withdrawal (Platoon-Company)
17-2-9225	Conduct a Screen (Platoon-Company)

### **TASK:** Knock Out Bunker (07-3-D9406)

**CONDITIONS (CUE):** The unit is moving tactically while conducting operations. The enemy initiates contact from concealed bunker network. All or part of the unit is receiving accurate enemy direct fire. Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture4 (MOPP 4).

**CUE:** The unit receives an order to knock out an enemy bunker from which it is receiving fire.

**STANDARDS:** The unit destroys the designated bunker(s) by killing, capturing, or forcing the withdrawal of enemy personnel within. The unit maintains a sufficient fighting force to repel an enemy counterattack and continue operations.

### **TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:**

1. The unit takes the following actions, deploy:
  - a. The squad/team in contact establishes a base of fire.
  - b. Weapons squad leader positions machine gun(s) to reinforce rifle squad in contact.
  - c. Platoon sergeant moves to support-by-fire position and assumes control of the position's fires. (The weapon squad leader repositions another machine gun, as needed, based on METT-TC).
  - d. The squad in contact gains and maintains fire superiority by—
    - (1) Destroying or suppressing enemy crew-served weapons.
    - (2) Continuing suppressive fires at the lowest possible level.
    - (3) Suppressing the bunker and any supporting positions.
    - (4) The squad employs shoulder-launched munitions as required.
  - e. The platoon forward observer calls for and adjusts indirect fires as directed by the platoon leader, including the use of smoke to obscure the enemy position.
  - f. Establishes security to rear and flanks of support by fire position.
2. Report:
  - a. Submits contact reports.
  - b. Submits size, activity, location, unit, time, and equipment (SALUTE) report to commander.
  - c. Submits situation reports (SITREPs) as needed.
3. Evaluate and develop the situation:
  - a. The platoon leader, his radio telephone operator, and platoon forward observer move forward to link up with the squad leader of the squad in contact.
  - b. The platoon leader evaluates the situation by identifying the enemy's composition, disposition, and capabilities—

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:**

(1) Identifies enemy disposition: number and location of enemy bunkers, level of mutual support and overlapping fires between positions, and connecting trenches and protective obstacles.

(2) Identifies enemy composition and strength: the number of enemy automatic weapons, the presence of any vehicles, and the employment of indirect fires are indicators of enemy strength.

(3) Identifies enemy capability to: defend, reinforce, attack, and withdraw.

c. Platoon leader develops the situation by determining where he can move to a position of advantage. These include—

(1) A vulnerable flank or blind spot to at least one bunker.

(2) A covered and concealed flanking route to the flank of the bunker.

4. Develop a course of action (COA):

a. The platoon leader determines—

(1) Which bunker poses the greatest threat.

(2) Where the adjoining bunkers are located.

(3) Requirement to breach protective obstacles.

b. Platoon leader determines where support positions will be placed.

c. Platoon leader determines size and make up of assault squad.

5. Execute COA:

a. Platoon leader directs the supporting element to suppress bunker—

(1) Platoon sergeant repositions a squad, a fire team, or a machine gun team to isolate the bunker and continue suppressive fires, as necessary.

(2) Forward observer shifts fires, as necessary.

b. Platoon leader directs the assault squad to attack the bunker—

(1) The assaulting squad, platoon leader, and radio telephone operator moves along the covered and concealed route to an assault position and does not mask the fires of the fire element.

(2) Soldiers constantly watch for other bunkers or enemy positions in support of bunkers.

(3) The supporting element shifts or ceases fire (direct fire and indirect fire).

(4) Upon reaching the last covered and concealed position—

(a) Buddy team #1 (team leader and the automatic rifleman) remains where they can cover buddy team #2 (grenadier and rifleman).

(b) Platoon leader/squad leader shifts supporting fires as required.

(5) Buddy team #2 moves to a blind spot near the bunker.

(a) One Soldier takes up a covered position near the exit.

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES:**

(b) The other Soldier cooks off a grenade, announces, "FRAG OUT," and throws it through an aperture.

(c) After the grenade detonates, the Soldier covering the exit enters first and the team clears the bunker.

(6) Buddy team #1 moves to join buddy team #2.

(7) The team leader:

(a) Inspects the bunker.

(b) Marks the bunker according to unit SOP.

(c) Signals squad leader that bunker is clear.

c. The platoon leader—

(1) Directs the supporting squad to move up and knock out the next bunker.

OR

(2) Directs the assaulting squad to continue and knock out the next bunker.

(3) Rotates squads as necessary.

d. The platoon/squad leader accounts for Soldiers, provides a SITREP to higher headquarters, reorganizes as necessary, and continues the mission.

**SUPPORTING PRODUCTS**

<b>Product ID</b>	<b>Product Name</b>
<u>FM 3-21.8</u>	The Infantry Rifle Platoon and Squad

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
071-054-0004	Engage Targets With an M136 Launcher
071-311-2130	Engage Targets With an M203 Grenade Launcher
071-325-4407	Employ Hand Grenades
071-010-0006	Engage Targets With an M249 Machine Gun
113-571-1022	Perform Voice Communications

**SUPPORTED COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
07-3-3072	Fire a Mortar Fire for Effect Mission (Section-Unit)
07-3-3054	Fire a Mortar Adjust Fire Mission (Section-Unit)
07-3-5090	Process a Mortar Call for Fire Mission (Section-Unit)

**TASK:** Evacuate a Casualty (Dismounted and Mounted) (07-3-D9507)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit is stationary or moves, conducting operations. A Soldier has been injured and must be evacuated. All enemy in the area have been suppressed, neutralized, or destroyed, and local security is established. Some iterations of this drill should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture 4 (MOPP 4).

**CUE:** This drill begins when a unit member is injured and must be evacuated or the leader directs his personnel to conduct the drill.

**STANDARDS:** Element members conduct first aid and evacuate the casualties without dropping or causing further injury to the casualties. If necessary, the unit leader, combat medic, or any Soldier requests medical evacuation (MEDEVAC) and reports the contact to higher headquarters (HQ).

### TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES

1. Element members conduct first aid and evacuate the casualties without dropping or causing further injury to the casualties.
2. Drill is conducted while dismounted. Unit personnel take the following actions:
  - a. Any unit member provides initial first aid (self-aid/buddy aid).
  - b. Any unit combat lifesaver provides enhanced first aid or combat medic provides emergency medical treatment if necessary.
  - c. The unit leader, combat medic, or any Soldier requests MEDEVAC using the 9-Line MEDEVAC request if necessary.
  - d. The unit aid and litter team or designated members evacuate casualties to the casualty collection point (CCP) or patient collecting point (PCP) and request MEDEVAC. They take the following actions:
    - (1) Remove key operational items and equipment (maps, simple key loader [SKL]/automated network control devices [ANCD], position-locating devices, laser pointers, and other sensitive items).
    - (2) Account for the weapons and ammunition of casualties according to the unit standing operation procedures (SOPs).
    - (3) Complete DD Form 1380, *U.S. Field Medical Card*, and unit leaders or any member complete Department of the Army (DA) Form 1156, *Casualty Feeder Card*.
    - (4) Evacuate casualty to the CCP, PCP, or aid station using litters, one or two man carry, or by having casualties with minor wounds walk.
3. Drill is conducted while mounted. Unit personnel take the following actions:
  - a. Crew/occupants provide initial first aid (self-aid/buddy aid).

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

b. Any unit combat lifesaver, combat medic, or designated Soldier moves to the vehicle to provide first aid or enhanced first aid (self-aid, buddy aid, and combat lifesaver) and emergency medical treatment (EMT) (combat medic) and then evacuates the casualty.

c. Designated Soldiers remove the casualty from the vehicle so as not to cause further injury. They take the following actions:

(1) Remove all key operational items and equipment (maps, simple key loader [SKL]/automated network control devices [ANCD], position-locating devices, and all other sensitive items).

(2) Account for the weapons and ammunition of casualties according to unit SOPs.

(3) Complete DD Form 1380, and DA Form 1156.

(4) Evacuate casualties to the CCP or PCP and request MEDEVAC (9-line MEDEVAC request) or evacuate directly to the aid station using available vehicle assets.

4. Unit leaders report the contact and casualties according to unit SOPs to higher HQ.

**SUPPORTING PRODUCTS**

<b>Product ID</b>	<b>Product Name</b>
<u>FM 3-21.8</u>	The Infantry Rifle Platoon and Squad
FM 3-21.75	Warrior Ethos and Soldier Combat Skills

**SUPPORTED INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
081-831-0101	Request Medical Evacuation
081-831-1003	Perform First Aid to Clear an Object Stuck in the Throat of a Conscious Casualty
081-831-1005	Perform First Aid to Prevent or Control Shock
081-831-1007	Perform First Aid for Burns
081-831-1025	Perform First Aid for an Open Abdominal Wound
081-831-1026	Perform First Aid for an Open Chest Wound
081-831-1032	Perform First Aid for Bleeding and/or Severed Extremity
081-831-1033	Perform First Aid for an Open Head Wound
081-831-1034	Perform First Aid for a Suspected Fracture
081-831-1046	Transport a Casualty
113-571-1022	Perform Voice Communications
805C-PAD-2060	Report Casualties

**SUPPORTED COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
07-2-5027	Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Platoon-Company)
08-2-0003	Treat Casualties
08-2-0004	Evacuate Casualties

**TASK:** Enter a Trench to Secure a Foothold (07-3-D9410)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon moves tactically and receives effective fire from an enemy trench. The platoon is ordered to secure a foothold in the trench. The platoon has only organic weapons support available.

**CUE:** The platoon leader initiates drill by giving the order for the assault element to secure a foothold in the trench.

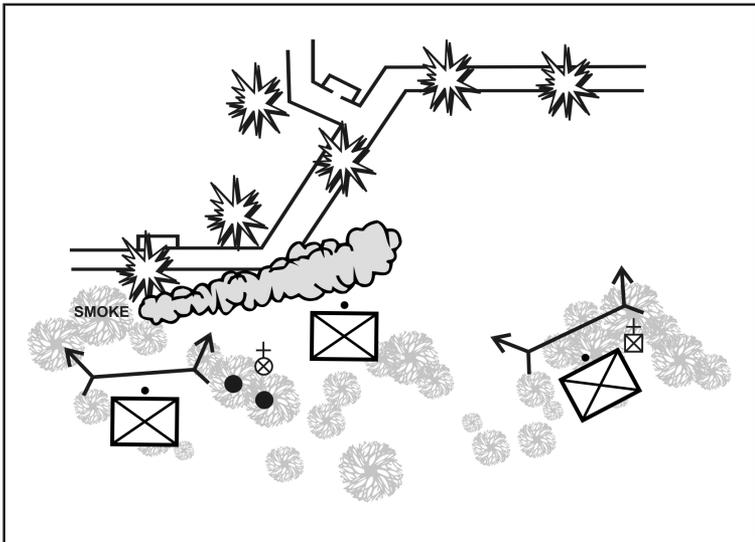
**STANDARDS:** The platoon leader quickly identifies the entry point. The platoon secures the entry point, enters the trench, and secures an area large enough for the follow-on unit. The platoon maintains a sufficient fighting force to repel enemy counterattack and continues the mission.

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

1. A platoon executes actions on contact to eliminate or suppress fires from the trench.
2. The section/squad in contact takes the following actions:
  - a. Deploys; takes the following actions:
    - (1) Returns fire.
    - (2) Seeks cover.
    - (3) Establishes fire superiority.
    - (4) Establishes local security.
    - (5) The platoon sergeant repositions other sections/squads to focus supporting fires and increase observation.
  - b. Reports; takes the following actions:
    - (1) Section/squad leader reports location of hostile fire to platoon leader from base-of-fire position using the size, activity, location, unit, time, and equipment (SALUTE) format.
    - (2) The platoon leader sends contact report followed by a SALUTE report to commander.
3. The platoon leader evaluates and develops the situation. He takes the following actions:
  - a. Evaluates the situation using the situation reports (SITREPs) from the section/squad in contact and his personal observations. At the minimum his evaluation should include:
    - (1) Number of enemy weapons or volume of fire.
    - (2) Presence of vehicles.
    - (3) Employment of indirect fires.
  - b. The platoon leader quickly develops the situation by taking the following actions:
    - (1) Conducts a quick reconnaissance to determine enemy flanks.
    - (2) Locates mutually supporting positions.

### TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES

- (3) Locates any obstacles that impede the assault or provide some type of cover or concealment.
  - (4) Determines whether the force is inferior or superior.
  - (5) Analyzes reports from section/squad leaders, teams in contact, or adjacent units.
4. The platoon leader chooses a course of action (COA). He takes the following actions:
    - a. Decides to enter the trench and selects his entry point.
    - b. Selects a covered and concealed route to his entry point.
    - c. Directs his maneuver element to secure the near side of the entry point and reduce the obstacle to gain a foothold.
    - d. Repositions the remaining section/squad to provide additional observation and supporting fires.
  5. The platoon executes COA (uses suppress, obscure, secure, reduce, assault [SOSRA] to set conditions for the assault). (See Figure 1.) It takes the following actions:



**Figure 1. Enter a trench to secure a foothold**

- a. Suppresses and obscures. Takes the following actions:
  - (1) Ensures platoon leader or forward observer (FO) calls for and adjusts indirect fire in support of assault.
  - (2) Ensures platoon sergeant directs base-of-fire section/squad to cover maneuvering section/squad.

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

(3) Obscures maneuver element's movement with smoke, if available.

b. Secures the near side and reduce the obstacle. The maneuver section/squad clears entry point. They take the following actions:

(1) Section/squad leader moves the assaulting squad to last covered and concealed position short of the entry point.

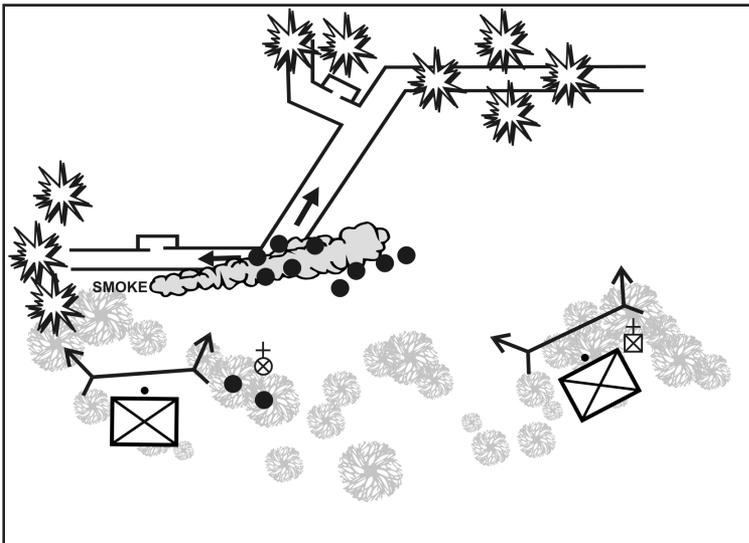
(2) Section/squad leader designates entry point.

(3) Base-of-fire section/squad shifts fires from entry point and continues to suppress adjacent enemy positions.

(4) Section/squad leader uses one team to suppress the entry point and positions the assaulting team at the entry point.

c. The platoon leader directs FO to shift indirect fires to isolate the object and the base of fire sections/squads to shifts fire as assault section/squad advances.

d. The platoon secures the far side and establishes a foothold. (See Figure 2.) It takes the following actions:



**Figure 2. Enter a trench to secure a foothold (continued)**

(1) Two Soldiers position themselves against the edge of the trench to roll right and left of the entry point to clear far side of obstacle and establish foothold.

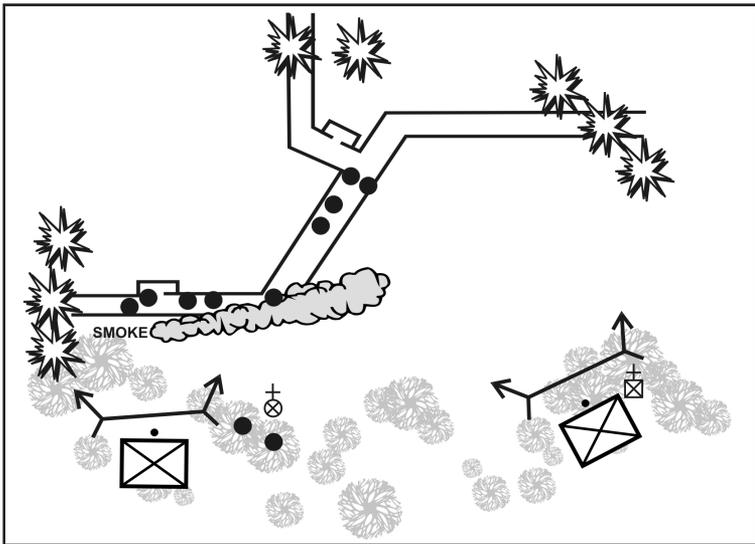
### TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES

(2) The assault team engages all identified or likely enemy positions with rapid, short bursts of automatic fire and scanned the trench for concealed enemy positions. The rest of the section/squad provides immediate security outside the trench.

(3) The assault team clears enough room for the section/squad or to the first trench junction and announces, CLEAR.

(4) The section/squad leader marks entry point according to platoon standing operating procedures (SOPs), then sends next assault team in to increase the size of the foothold by announcing, NEXT TEAM IN.

(5) The next assault team moves into trench and secures assigned area. (See Figure 3.)



**Figure 3. Enter a trench to secure a foothold (continued)**

(6) The section/squad leader reports to platoon leader that the foothold is secure.

(7) The platoon leader moves to the maneuver section/squad leader to assess the situation.

(8) The platoon sergeant moves forward to control supporting squads outside the trench.

(9) The platoon leader sends necessary teams to clear an area large enough for the platoon, and then reports to the commander that the foothold is secure and if additional support is needed to continue clearing the trench.

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

6. The platoon/section/squad leaders account for Soldiers, provide a SITREP to higher HQ, reorganize as necessary, and continue the mission.

**TASK:** Breach of a Mined Wire Obstacle (07-3-D9412)

**CONDITIONS:** The platoon encounters a mine wire obstacle preventing the company's movement. The platoon's forward movement is stopped by a wire obstacle reinforced with mines that cannot be bypassed. The enemy engages the platoon from positions on the far side of the obstacle.

**CUE:** This drill begins when the unit's lead element encounters a mine wire obstacle and the unit leader orders an element to breach the obstacle.

**STANDARDS:** The platoon breaches the obstacle and moves all personnel and equipment quickly through the breach. The platoon moves the support element and follow-on forces through the breach and maintains a sufficient fighting force to secure the far side of the breach.

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

1. A platoon's section/squad executes actions on contact to reduce effective fires from the far side of the obstacle.
2. The section/squad in contact takes the following actions:
  - a. Deploys; takes the following actions:
    - (1) Returns fire.
    - (2) Seeks cover.
    - (3) Establishes fire superiority.
    - (4) Establishes local security.
    - (5) Platoon sergeant repositions other squads to focus supporting fires and increase observation.
  - b. Reports; takes the following actions:
    - (1) Squad leader reports location of hostile fire to platoon leader from base-of-fire position using the size, activity, location, unit, time, and equipment (SALUTE) format.
    - (2) Platoon leader sends contact report followed by a SALUTE report to commander.
3. The platoon leader evaluates and develops the situation. He takes the following actions:
  - a. Quickly evaluates the situation with using the situation reports (SITREPs) from the squad in contact and his personal observations. At a minimum his evaluation should include:
    - (1) Number of enemy weapons or volume of fire.
    - (2) Presence of vehicles.
    - (3) Employment of indirect fires.
  - b. Quickly develops the situation. He takes the following actions:
    - (1) Conducts a quick reconnaissance to determine enemy flanks.
    - (2) Locates mutually supporting positions.

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

- (3) Locates obstacles that impede the assault or provide some type of cover or concealment.
  - (4) Determines whether the force is inferior or superior.
  - (5) Analyzes reports from squad leaders, teams in contact, or adjacent units.
4. The platoon leader directs the vehicles (if available) and the squad in contact to support the movement of another squad to the breach point. He takes the following actions:
- a. Indicates the route to the base-of-fire position.
  - b. Indicates the enemy position to be suppressed.
  - c. Indicates the breach point and the route the rest of the platoon will take.
  - d. Gives instructions for lifting and shifting fires.
5. On the platoon leader's signal, the base-of-fire squad takes the following actions:
- a. Destroys or suppresses enemy weapons that are firing effectively against the platoon.
  - b. Obscures the enemy position with smoke.
  - c. Continues to maintain fire superiority while conserving ammunition and minimizing forces in contact.
6. The platoon leader designates one squad as the breach squad and the remaining squad as the assault squad once the breach has been made. (The assault squad may add its fires to the base-of-fire squad. Normally, it follows the covered and concealed route of the breach squad and assaults through immediately after the breach is made.)
7. The base-of-fire squad moves to the breach point and establishes a base of fire.
8. The platoon sergeant moves forward to the base-of-fire squad with the second machine gun and assumes control of the squad.
9. The platoon leader leads the breach and assault squads along the covered and concealed route.
10. The platoon forward observer (FO) calls for and adjusts indirect fires as directed by the platoon leader to support the breach and assault.
11. The breach squad executes actions to breach the obstacle (footpath). The squad leader takes the following actions:
- a. Directs one fire team to support the movement of the other fire team to the breach point.
  - b. Designates the breach point.
  - c. Ensures the base-of-fire team continues to provide suppressive fires and to isolate the breach point. (See Figure 1.)

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES

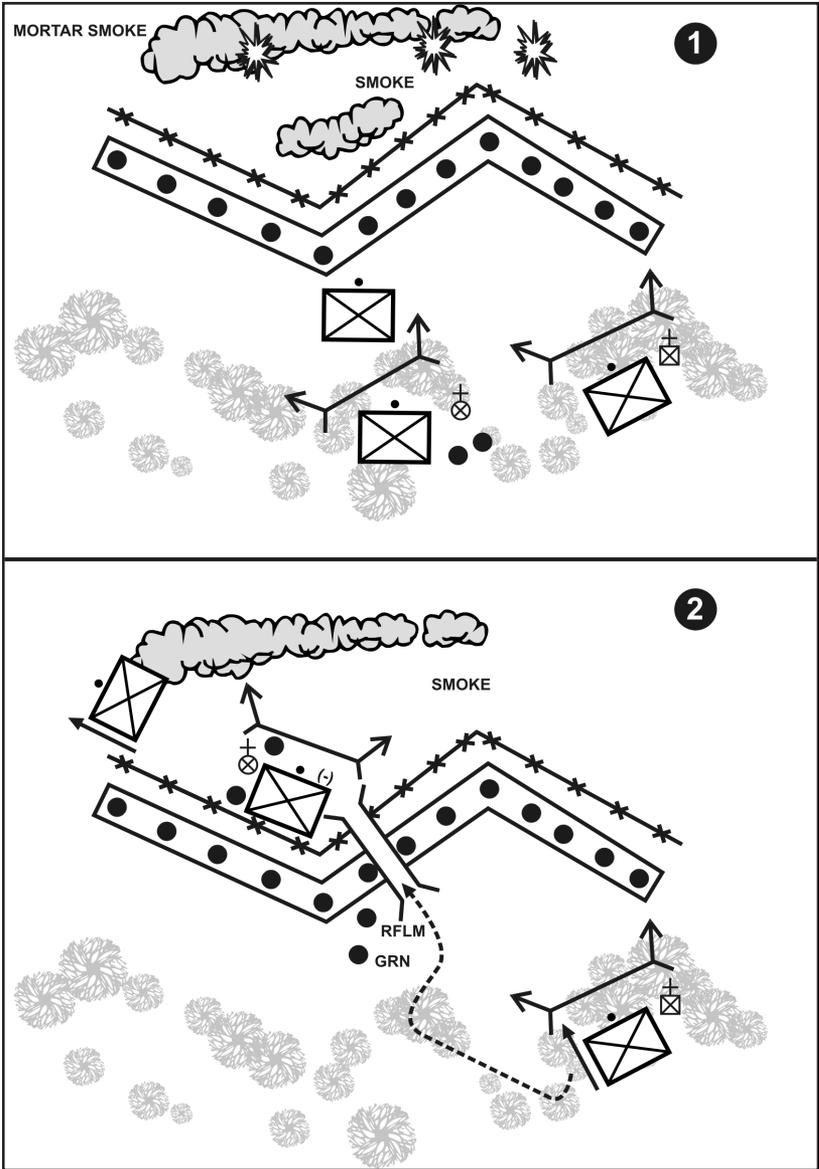


Figure 1. Breach obstacle

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

d. The breaching fire team, with the squad leader, moves to the breach point using the covered and concealed route.

(1) The squad leader and breaching fire team leader employs smoke grenades to obscure the breach point. The platoon base-of-fire element shifts direct fires away from the breach point and continues to suppress adjacent enemy positions.

(2) The breaching fire team leader positions himself and the automatic rifleman on one flank of the breach point to provide close-in security.

(3) The grenadier and rifleman (or the antiarmor specialist and automatic rifleman) of the breaching fire team probe for mines and cut the wire obstacle, marking their path as they proceed. (Bangalore is preferred, if available.)

(4) Once the obstacle is breached, the breaching fire team leader and the automatic rifleman moves to the far side of the obstacle using covered and concealed positions. They signal the squad leader when they are in position and ready to support.

e. The squad leader signals the base-of-fire team leader to move his fire team up and through the breach. He then moves through the obstacle and joins the breaching fire team, leaving the grenadier (or antiarmor specialist) and rifleman of the supporting fire team on the near side of the breach to guide the rest of the platoon through.

f. Using the same covered and concealed route as the breaching fire team, the base-of-fire team moves through the breach and to a covered and concealed position on the far side.

12. The breach squad leader reports the situation to the platoon leader and posts guides at the breach point.

13. The platoon leader leads the assault squad through the breach in the obstacle and positions it on the far side to support the movement of the remainder of the platoon or to assault the enemy position covering the obstacle.

14. The breaching squad continues to widen the breach to allow vehicles to pass through.

15. The platoon leader provides a SITREP to the company commander and directs his breaching squad to move through the obstacle. The platoon leader appoints guides to guide the company through the breach point.

### SUPPORTING PRODUCTS

<b>Product ID</b>	<b>Product Name</b>
<u>FM 3-21.8</u>	The Infantry Rifle Platoon and Squad
FM 3-21.75	Warrior Ethos and Soldier Combat Skills
FM 3-21.9	The SBCT Infantry Rifle Platoon and Squad

### SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
052-192-3060	Conduct a Breach a Minefield
052-193-1013	Neutralize Booby Traps
071-311-2129	Correct Malfunctions of an M203 Grenade Launcher
071-311-2130	Engage Targets with an M203 Grenade Launcher
071-326-0502	Move Under Direct Fire
071-326-5606	Select an Overwatch Position
071-326-0503	Move Over, Through, or Around Obstacles (Except Minefields)
071-326-5611	Conduct the Maneuver of a Squad

### SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
17-2-3070	Breach an Obstacle (Platoon-Company)

### **TASK:** React to Air Attack Drill (17-3-D8004)

**CONDITIONS:** While operating in a tactical environment, the platoon or section identifies threat aircraft, requiring it to take either passive or active air defense measures. The platoon is digitally connected (if equipped) with higher headquarters (HQ) via Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below (FBCB2). Some iterations of this task should be performed in mission-oriented protective procedures 4 (MOPP 4).

**CUE:** Any Soldier gives an oral or visual signal for a chemical attack or when a chemical alarm activates.

**STANDARDS:** The platoon or section executes appropriate air defense measures and prevents the aircraft from effectively engaging and/or observing the platoon/section. The platoon reports to higher HQ. No friendly unit suffers casualties or equipment damage as a result of fratricide.

### **TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

1. The vehicle or individual who identifies threat aircraft alerts the platoon with a contact report containing these elements:
  - a. Contact.
  - b. Bandit(s).
  - c. Cardinal direction (specify: north, south, east, or west).
2. Platoon/section leaders analyze situation to determine whether the platoon is in the direct path of and/or is the target of the threat aircraft. They take the following actions:
  - a. Order passive air defense measures when the platoon/section is not in the path of or target of the threat aircraft.OR
  - b. Order active air defense measures when the platoon is in the path of or target of the threat aircraft.
3. Platoons or sections execute passive air defense measures as necessary. They take the following actions:
  - a. On order of platoon/section leaders, move to covered and concealed positions, maintaining a minimum of 100 meters between vehicles and halts.
  - b. Prepare to engage on order of platoon/section leader.
  - c. Scan for follow-on aircraft.

**NOTE:** Higher HQ may order the platoon or section to continue movement.

4. Platoons execute active air defense measures as necessary. They take the following actions:
  - a. If in the direct path of flight, move away from the path of flight as fast as possible, moving at a 45-degree angle toward the attacking aircraft.

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

- b. Maintain at least 100-meter intervals and avoid creating a linear target for the attacking aircraft.
  - c. Orient on the aim point designated by the platoon/section leader and engage the aircraft with a high volume of machine gun fire using the proper lead technique for the type of aircraft and direction of movement.
  - d. Move quickly to covered and concealed positions and halts.
  - e. Remain in covered and concealed positions, as required.
  - f. Scan for follow-on aircraft.
5. Platoon leaders/platoon sergeants (PSGs) report situation to higher HQ as necessary. They send:
- a. Spot report (SPOTREP).
  - b. (D) Updated situation reports (SITREP), as necessary.

**NOTE:** Task steps and performance measures prefaced with a (D) may be performed digitally according to the order and/or unit SOPs. When preformatted messages do not exist or are not appropriate, free text messages may be substituted for FBCB2 messages identified in task steps.

**SUPPORTING PRODUCTS**

<b>Product ID</b>	<b>Product Name</b>
<u>FM 3-20.98</u>	Reconnaissance and Scout Platoon
FM 3-20.971	Reconnaissance and Cavalry Troop
FM 3-20.15	Tank Platoon

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
171-121-4017	Supervise Tank Platoon Formations and Drills
171-121-4051	Prepare a Situation Report (SITREP)
171-121-4057	Perform Techniques of Movement

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
07-2-3000	Conduct Support by Fire (Platoon-Company)
07-2-9001	Conduct an Attack (Platoon-Company)
07-2-9003	Conduct a Defense (Platoon-Company)
07-2-9012	Conduct a Relief in Place (Platoon-Company)
17-5-5585	Engage Multiple Machine Gun Targets on a M1-Series Tank
17-5-5590	Conduct Main Gun Misfire Procedures on a M1-Series Tank

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
17-5-5622	Engage Targets with the Main Gun from a M1-Series Tank
17-5-8006	React to an Antitank Guided Missile (ATGM)

**TASK:** React to Ambush (Far) (07-3-D9503)

**CONDITIONS:**

**Dismounted/mounted.** The platoon/squad/section moves tactically, conducting operations. The enemy initiates contact with direct and indirect fire.

**CUE:** This drill begins when the enemy initiates ambush with direct and indirect fire.

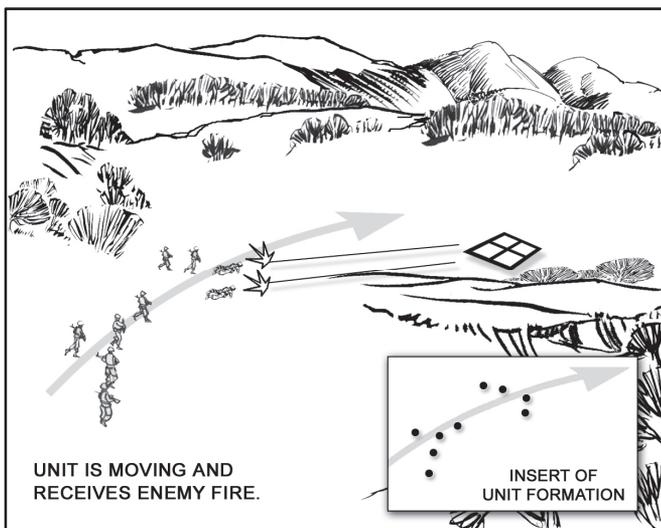
**STANDARDS:**

**Dismounted.** The unit immediately returns fire and occupies covered and/or concealed positions. The unit moves out of the kill zone, locates the enemy position, and conducts fire and maneuver to destroy the enemy.

**Mounted.** Vehicle gunners immediately return fire on known or suspected enemy positions as the unit continues to move out of the kill zone. The unit leader reports the contact to higher headquarters (HQ).

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

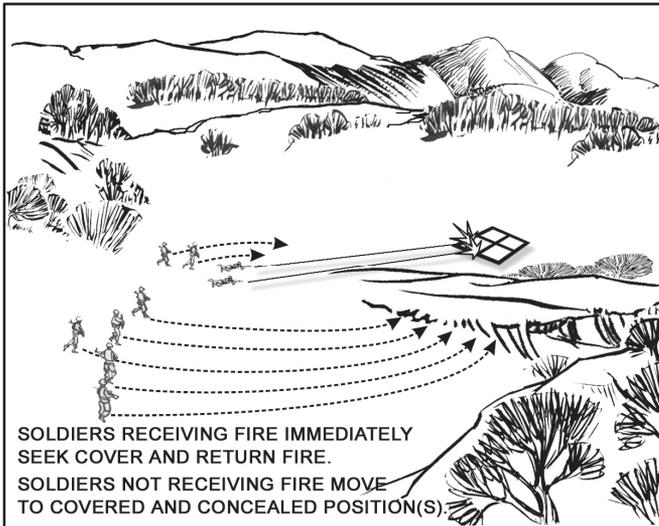
1. **Dismounted.** (See Figure 1.) Unit personnel take the following actions:



**Figure 1. React to ambush (far) (dismounted)**

- a. Soldiers receiving fire immediately return fire, seek cover, establish a support by fire, and suppress the enemy position(s).
- b. Soldiers not receiving fire move along a covered and concealed route to the enemies flank to assault the enemy position. (See Figure 2.)

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

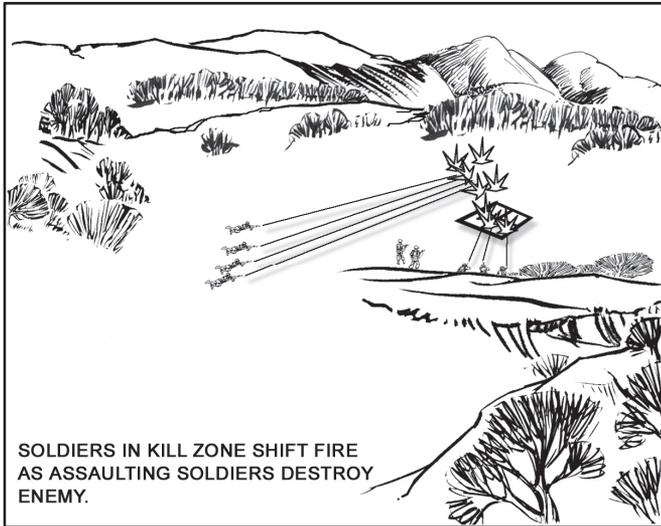


**Figure 2. React to ambush (far) (dismounted) (continued)**

c. Unit leaders or forward observers call for and adjust indirect fires and close air support, if available. On order, the unit leaders or forward observers lift or shift fires to isolate the enemy position or to attack them with indirect fires as they retreat.

d. Soldiers in the kill zone shift suppressive fires as the assaulting Soldiers fight through and destroy the enemy. (See Figure 3.)

## TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES



**Figure 3. React to ambush (far) (dismounted) (continued)**

- e. Unit leaders report the contact to higher HQ.
2. **Mounted.** Unit personnel take the following actions:
  - a. Gunners and personnel on vehicles immediately return fire.
  - b. If the roadway is clear, they move all vehicles through the kill zone.
  - c. Soldiers on the lead vehicle deploy vehicle smoke to obscure the enemy's view of the kill zone.
  - d. The vehicle commander, in disabled vehicles, orders Soldiers to dismount according to the variables of mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available-time available and civil considerations (METT-TC) and sets up security while awaiting recovery.
  - e. The remainder of the unit follows the lead vehicle out of the kill zone while continuing to suppress the enemy.
  - f. Unit leaders report the contact to higher HQ.

## SUPPORTING PRODUCTS

<b>Product ID</b>	<b>Product Name</b>
<u>FM 3-21.8</u>	The Infantry Rifle Platoon and Squad
FM 3-21.75	Warrior Ethos and Soldier Combat Skills
ATTP 3-21.9	SBCT Infantry Rifle Platoon and Squad

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
071-326-0502	Move Under Direct Fire
071-054-0004	Engage Targets with an M136 Launcher
071-311-2130	Engage Targets with an M203 Grenade Launcher
071-325-4407	Employ Hand Grenades
113-571-1022	Perform Voice Communications
071-326-5606	Select an Over-watch Position
071-326-5611	Conduct the Maneuver of a Squad
071-410-0002	React to Direct Fire While Mounted
071-100-0003	Engage Targets with an M4 or M4A1 Carbine
071-010-0006	Engage Targets with an M249 Machine Gun
071-313-3454	Engage Targets with a Caliber .50 M2 Machine Gun
071-025-0007	Engage Targets with an M240B Machine Gun
081-831-1001	Evaluate a Casualty (Tactical Combat Casualty Care)
081-831-1003	Perform First Aid to Clear an Object Stuck in the Throat of a Conscious Casualty

**SUPPORTED COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
19-3-2007	Conduct Convoy Security
07-2-1342	Conduct Tactical Movement (Platoon-Company)
07-2-1189	Conduct a Dismounted Tactical Road March (Platoon-Company)
07-2-1198	Conduct a Mounted Tactical Road March (Platoon-Company)
19-2-2004	Perform Convoy Security

**TASK:** React to Nuclear Attack (07-3-D9483)

**CONDITIONS:** The current enemy situation outlines a threat of tactical nuclear capabilities. With little-to-no warning, the squad/platoon encounters a brilliant flash of light while conducting tactical operations. Some portion of the unit moves in the assigned area while others are dismounted, either stationary or moving at the time of the attack.

**CUE:** The drill begins when any member sees a brilliant flash of light or a leader directs his personnel to conduct the drill.

**STANDARDS:** Dismounted personnel immediately drop to prone positions and take the individual steps necessary to survive the blast. Mounted personnel immediately drop down inside the vehicle and brace themselves for the blast. After the blast wave, they establish security.

### TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES

1. All personnel react to an unwarranted nuclear attack. They take the following actions:
  - a. **Dismounted** personnel immediately:
    - (1) Drop to a prone position and close eyes.
    - (2) Turn bodies head-on toward the blast.
    - (3) Place thumbs in ears.
    - (4) Cover faces with hands.
    - (5) Place arms under bodies.
    - (6) Tuck heads into shoulders; keeping helmets on and faces down.
    - (7) Stay down until the blast wave passes and debris stops falling.
    - (8) Check for casualties and damaged equipment.
  - b. **Mounted** personnel immediately:
    - (1) Drop down inside of vehicles.
    - (2) Before the blast wave, close hatches.
    - (3) Turn off unneeded radios.
    - (4) Brace themselves.
2. After the blast wave has passed, personnel give first aid to and evacuate casualties.
3. The platoon/squad leader takes the following actions:
  - a. Reestablishes the chain of command and communications.
  - b. Submits an initial chemical, biological, radiological, and nuclear (CBRN) 1 report.
  - c. Accounts for all Soldiers.
  - d. Provides a situation report (SITREP) to higher HQ.
  - e. Reorganizes as needed.
  - f. Continues the mission.

**SUPPORTING PRODUCTS**

<b>Product ID</b>	<b>Product Name</b>
<u>FM 3-21.8</u>	The Infantry Rifle Platoon and Squad

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
031-503-1018	React to Nuclear Hazard/Attack
031-503-1021	Mark NBC Contaminated Area

**SUPPORTING TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
03-2-9224	Conduct Operational Decontamination

**TASK:** React to a Chemical Attack (03-3-D0035)

**CONDITIONS:** The element moves or is stationary, conducting operations. The unit is attacked with a chemical agent. Soldiers hear a chemical alarm, observe an unknown gas or liquid, or are ordered to don their protective mask.

**CUE:** Any Soldier gives an oral or visual signal for a chemical attack, or when a chemical alarm activates.

**STANDARDS:** All soldiers don their protective mask within nine seconds or 15 seconds for masks with a hood. Soldiers assume mission-oriented protection posture 4 (MOPP 4) within eight minutes. The element identifies the chemical agent using M8 chemical detector paper and the M256 detector kit. The squad/platoon leader reports that the unit is under a chemical attack and submits chemical, biological, nuclear, radiological, and high-yield explosive (CBRNE) 1 reports to next higher echelon.

#### **TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

1. Soldiers don their protective mask.

**NOTE:** If Soldiers are using Joint-Service, Lightweight, Integrated, Suit Technology (JSLIST), the hood is not on the mask. Soldiers are only allotted nine seconds to don their protective mask.

**NOTE:** The mask gives immediate protection against traditional warfare agents. The mask may not completely protect the Soldier from certain toxic industrial chemicals, but it provides the best available protection to enable him to evacuate the hazard area. He may be required to evacuate to a minimum safe distance of at least 300 meters upwind from the contamination (if possible) or as directed by the commander.

2. Soldiers give vocal or nonvocal alarm.
3. Within 60 seconds, Soldiers use the appropriate skin decontamination kit (SDK) for individual decontamination, as necessary.
4. Soldiers assume MOPP 4 within eight minutes.
5. Soldiers initiate self- or buddy-aid, as needed.
6. The element identifies the chemical agent using M8 chemical detector paper and the M256 detector kit.
7. The element leader reports the chemical attack to higher headquarters using the CBRNE 1 report.
8. Leaders determine if decontamination is required and requests support, if necessary.
9. The element initiates immediate decontamination within 15 minutes (if necessary).

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

- 10. If contamination is present, the squad/platoon marks the area before leaving.
- 11. The element moves and displaces, as appropriate, or continues its mission.

**SUPPORTING PRODUCTS**

<b>Product ID</b>	<b>Product Name</b>
<u>FM 3-11</u>	Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense Operation
FM 3-11.4	Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical (NBC) Protection

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
031-503-1005	Submit and NBC 1 Report
031-503-1019	React to Chemical or Biological (CB) Hazard/Attack
031-503-1021	Mark NBC Contaminated Area
031-503-1031	Use the Chemical Agent Monitor
031-503-1042	Protect Yourself From Chemical and Biological (CB) Contamination Using Your Assigned Protective Mask
031-503-1037	Detect Chemical Agents Using M8 or M9 Detector Paper
071-326-0608	Use Visual Signaling Techniques
031-503-1042	Protect Yourself From CBRN Injury/Contamination When Changing MOPP (Using JSLIST)

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
03-2-9224	Conduct Operational Decontamination

**TASK:** React to Ambush (Near) (07-3-D9502)

**CONDITIONS:** (Dismounted/Mounted) - The unit is moving tactically, conducting operations. The enemy initiates contact with direct fire within hand grenade range. All or part of the unit is receiving accurate enemy direct fire.

**CUE:** This drill begins when the enemy initiates ambush within hand grenade range.

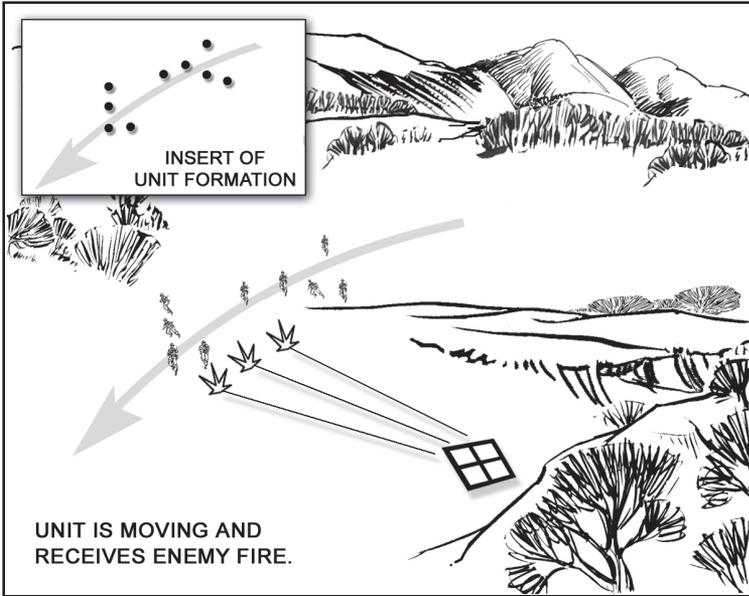
**STANDARDS:**

**Dismounted.** Soldiers in the kill zone immediately return fire on known or suspected enemy positions and assault through the kill zone. Soldiers not in the kill zone locate and place “well-aimed” suppressive fire on the enemy. The unit assaults through the kill zone and destroys the enemy.

**Mounted.** Vehicle gunners immediately return fire on known or suspected enemy positions as the unit continues to move out of the kill zone. Soldiers on disabled vehicles in the kill zone dismount, occupy covered positions and engage the enemy with accurate fire. Vehicle gunners and Soldiers outside the kill zone suppress the enemy. The unit assaults through the kill zone and destroys the enemy. The unit leader reports the contact to higher headquarters (HQ).

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

1. Dismounted (See Figure 1.); takes the following actions:



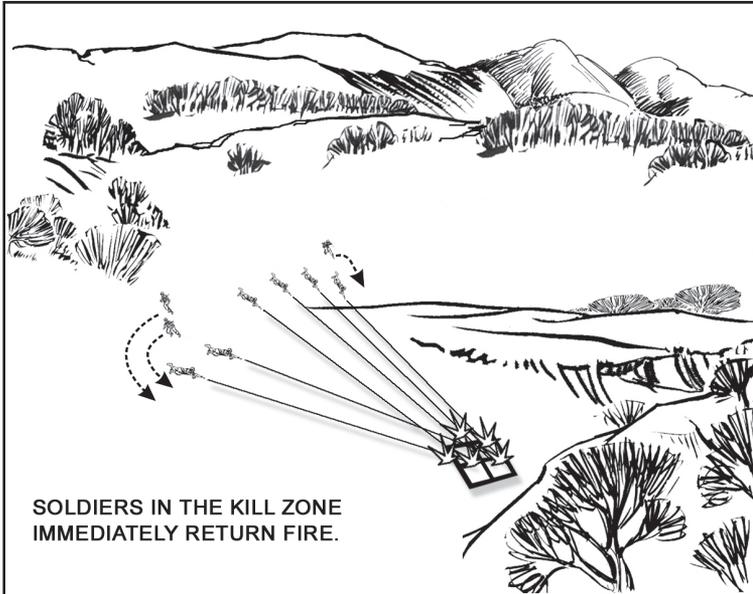
**Figure 1. React to ambush (near) (dismounted)**

a. Soldiers in the kill zone execute one of the following two actions:

(1) Return fire immediately. If cover is not available, immediately, without order or signal, assault through the kill zone.

(2) Return fire immediately. If cover is available, without order or signal, occupy the nearest covered position, and throw smoke grenades. (See Figure 2.)

## TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES

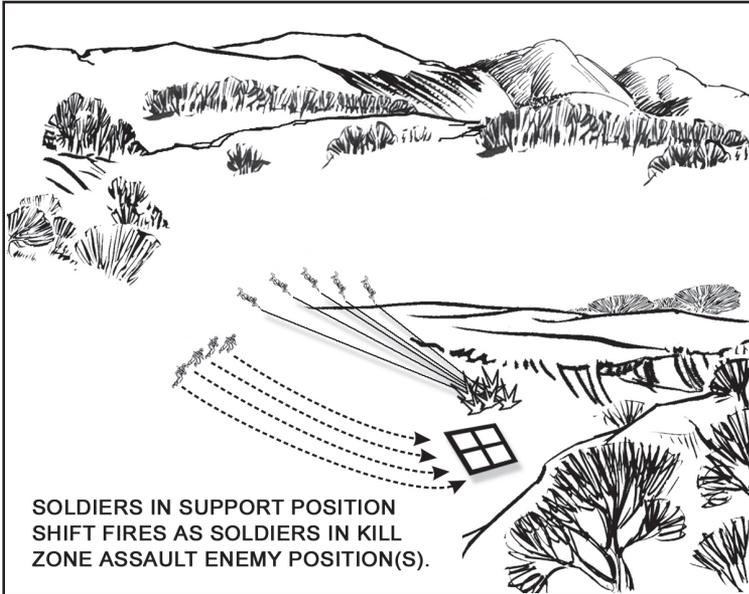
**Figure 2. React to ambush (near) (dismounted) (continued)**

b. Soldiers in the kill zone assault through the ambush using fire and movement.

c. Soldiers not in the kill zone identify the enemy location, place “well-aimed” suppressive fire on the enemy's position and shift fire as Soldiers assault the objective.

d. Soldiers assault through and destroy the enemy position. (See Figure 3.)

TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES



**Figure 3. React to ambush (near) (dismounted) (continued)**

- e. The unit leader reports the contact to higher HQ.
- 2. Mounted; takes the following actions:
  - a. Vehicle gunners in the kill zone immediately return fire and deploy vehicle smoke, while moving out of the kill zone.
  - b. Soldiers in disabled vehicles in the kill zone immediately obscure themselves from the enemy with smoke, dismount if possible, seek covered positions, and return fire.
  - c. Vehicle gunners and Soldiers outside of the kill zone identify the enemy positions, place "well-aimed" suppressive fire on the enemy, and shift fire as Soldiers assault the objective.
  - d. The unit leader calls for and adjusts indirect fire and request close air support according to METT-TC.
  - e. Soldiers in the kill zone assault through the ambush and destroy the enemy.
  - f. The unit leader reports the contact to higher HQ.

**SUPPORTING PRODUCTS**

<b>Product ID</b>	<b>Product Name</b>
<u>FM 3-21.75</u>	Warrior Ethos and Soldier Combat Skills
FM 3-21.8	The Infantry Rifle Platoon and Squad
ATTP 3-21.9	SBCT Infantry Rifle Platoon and Squad

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
071-000-0006	React to Man-to-Man Contact
071-030-0004	Engage Targets with an MK 19 Grenade Machine Gun
071-054-0004	Engage Targets with an M136 Launcher
071-311-2130	Engage Targets with an M203 Grenade Launcher
071-325-4407	Employ Hand Grenades
071-705-0007	Engage Targets with an M16-Series Rifle/M4-Series Carbine using an M68 Reflex Sight (Close Combat Optic)
071-010-0006	Engage Targets with an M249 Machine Gun
061-283-6003	Adjust Indirect Fire
071-326-0502	Move Under Direct Fire
071-326-5606	Select an Overwatch Position
071-410-0002	React to Direct Fire While Mounted
113-571-1022	Perform Voice Communications
081-831-1001	Evaluate a Casualty (Tactical Combat Casualty Care)
081-831-1003	Perform First Aid to Clear an Object Stuck in the Throat of a Conscious Casualty
081-831-1005	Perform First Aid to Prevent or Control Shock
071-326-0608	Use Visual Signaling Techniques
071-326-0510	React to Indirect Fire While Dismounted
071-326-3002	React to Indirect Fire While Mounted
071-326-0501	Move as a Member of a Fire Team

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
07-2-1342	Conduct Tactical Movement (Platoon-Company)
07-2-1189	Conduct a Dismounted Tactical Road March (Platoon-Company)
07-2-1198	Conduct a Mounted Tactical Road March (Platoon-Company)

**TASK:** Enter and Clear a Room (07-4-D9509)

**CONDITIONS:** The unit is conducting operations as part of a larger unit and has been given the mission to clear a room. Enemy personnel are believed to be in building. Noncombatants may be present in the building and are possibly intermixed with the enemy personnel. The unit has support and security elements positioned at the initial foothold and outside the building. Some iterations of this drill should be performed in mission-oriented protective posture 4 (MOPP 4).

**CUE:** This drill begins on the order of the unit leader or on the command of the clearing team leader.

**STANDARDS:** The team secures and clears the room by killing or capturing the enemy, while minimizing friendly casualties, noncombatant casualties and collateral damage; team complies with rules of engagement (ROE). The team maintains a sufficient fighting force to repel an enemy counterattack and continue operations.

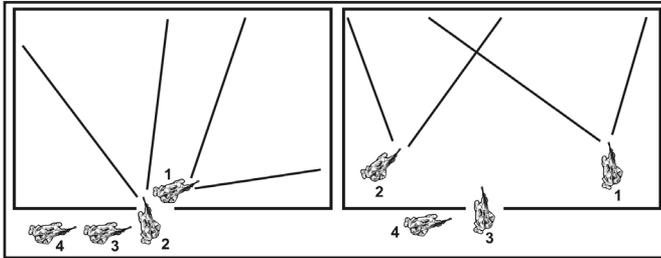
**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**

1. The unit leader occupies a position to best control the security and clearing teams.
  - a. Unit leader directs a clearing team to secure corridors or hallways outside the room with appropriate firepower.
  - b. The clearing team leader (normally the number two Soldier) takes a position to best control the clearing team outside the room.
  - c. The unit leader gives the signal to clear the room.

**NOTE:** If the unit is conducting high intensity combat operations and grenades are being used, the unit must comply with the ROE and consider the building structure. A Soldier of the clearing team cooks off at least one grenade (fragmentation, concussion or stun grenade), throws the grenade into the room and announces, FRAG OUT. The use of grenades should be consistent with the ROE and building structure. Soldiers can be injured from fragments if walls and floors are thin or damaged.

2. The clearing team enters and clears the room.
  - a. The first two Soldiers enter the room almost simultaneously. (See Figure 1.)

## TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES



**Figure 1. Clear a room, first two Soldiers enter**

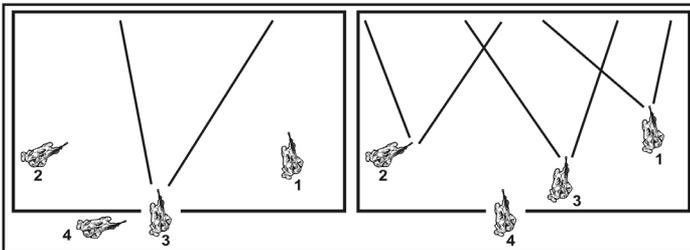
(1) The first Soldier enters the room and moves left or right along the path of least resistance to one of two corners. He assumes a position of domination facing into the room. During movement, he scans his sector and eliminates all immediate threats.

(2) The second Soldier (normally the clearing team leader) enters the room immediately after the first Soldier. He moves in the opposite direction of the first Soldier to his point of domination. During movement he eliminates all immediate threats in his sector.

**NOTE:** During high intensity combat the Soldiers enter immediately after the grenade detonates. Both Soldiers enter firing aimed bursts into their sectors engaging all threats or hostile targets to cover their entry.

**NOTE:** If the first or second Soldier discovers that the room is small or a short room (such as a closet or bathroom), he announces: SHORT ROOM or SHORT. The clearing team leader informs the third and fourth Soldiers whether or not to stay outside the room or to enter.

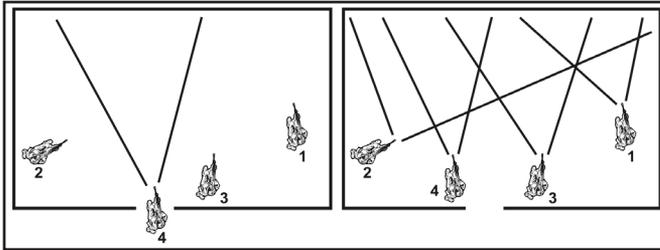
b. The third Soldier moves opposite direction of the second Soldier while scanning and clearing his sector as he assumes his point of domination. (See Figure 2.)



**Figure 2. Clear a room, third Soldier enters**

c. The fourth Soldier moves opposite of the third Soldier to a position that dominates his sector. (See Figure 3.)

**TASK STEPS AND PERFORMANCE MEASURES**



**Figure 3. Clear a room, fourth Soldier enters**

d. All Soldiers engage enemy combatants with precision aimed fire and identify noncombatants to avoid collateral damage.

**NOTE:** If necessary or on order, number one and two Soldier of the clearing team may move deeper into the room while overwatched by the other team members.

- e. The clearing team leader announces to the unit leader when the room is CLEAR.
- 3. The unit leader enters the room.
  - a. Makes a quick assessment of room and threat.
  - b. Determines if unit has fire power to continue clearing their assigned sector.
  - c. Reports to the higher unit leader that the first room is clear.
  - d. Requests needed sustainment to continue clearing his sector.
  - e. Marks entry point according to unit SOP.
- 4. The unit consolidates and reorganizes, as needed.

**SUPPORTING COLLECTIVE PRODUCTS**

<b>Product ID</b>	<b>Product Name</b>
<u>FM 3-21.8</u>	The Infantry Rifle Platoon and Squad
ATTP 3-06.11	Combined Arms Operations in Urban Terrain
ATTP 3-21.9	SBCT Infantry Rifle Platoon and Squad

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
071-326-0557	Select Hasty Firing Positions During an Urban Operation
071-440-0028	Engage Targets During an Urban Operation
071-440-0031	Employ Hand Grenades During an Urban Operation
052-192-1271	Identify Visual Indicators of an Improvised Explosive Device (IED) (Unclassified/For Official Use Only) (U//FOUO)
113-571-1022	Perform Voice Communications

**SUPPORTING INDIVIDUAL TASKS**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
081-831-1046	Transport a Casualty
071-004-0006	Engage Targets With an M9 Pistol
081-831-1005	Perform First Aid to Prevent or Control Shock
071-100-0030	Engage Targets with an M16-Series Rifle/M4-Series Carbine

**SUPPORTED COLLECTIVE TASK**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
07-3-9018	Enter and Clear a Building (Section-Platoon)

**This page intentionally left blank.**

## Infantry Platoon Unit Task List

The unit task list (UTL) shown in Table A-1 identifies collective tasks that the unit is organized, manned and equipped to conduct according to their TOE. The platoon leader uses this list to select those tasks that support the company METL. The platoon leader may accept risk and not train the entire UTL. The task numbers and task titles are listed under each of the six warfighting functions.

**Table A-1. Infantry platoon unit task list**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
<b><i>Mission Command</i></b>	
07-2-5081	Conduct Troop-Leading Procedures (Platoon-Company)
55-2-4806	Prepare Equipment for Deployment
55-2-4828	Plan Unit Deployment Activities Upon Receipt of a Warning Order
<b><i>Movement &amp; Maneuver</i></b>	
07-2-1090	Conduct a Movement to Contact (Platoon-Company)
07-2-9001	Conduct an Attack (Platoon-Company)
07-2-1256	Conduct an Attack by Fire (Platoon-Company)
07-2-1261	Conduct an Attack in an Urban Area (Platoon-Company)
07-2-9008	Conduct a Raid (Platoon-Company)
07-2-1477	Breach an Obstacle (Platoon-Company)
07-2-9002	Conduct a Bypass (Platoon-Company)
07-2-9003	Conduct a Defense (Platoon-Company)
07-2-1378	Defend in an Urban Area (Platoon-Company)
07-2-9004	Conduct a Delay (Platoon-Company)

**Table A-1. Infantry platoon unit task list (continued)**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
07-2-9009	Conduct a Withdrawal (Platoon-Company)
07-2-9012	Conduct a Relief in Place (Platoon-Company)
07-2-3000	Conduct Support by Fire (Platoon-Company)
07-2-1387	Employ a Reserve Force (Platoon-Company)
07-2-3027	Integrate Direct Fires (Platoon-Company)
17-2-0320	Conduct Infiltration (Platoon-Company)
07-2-1324	Conduct Area Security (Platoon-Company)
07-2-1396	Employ Obstacles (Platoon-Company)
07-3-9018	Enter and Clear a Building (Section-Platoon)
17-2-9225	Conduct a Screen (Platoon-Company)
17-2-4010	Conduct Zone Reconnaissance
17-2-4011	Conduct Area Reconnaissance (Platoon-Company)
07-2-9006	Conduct a Passage of Lines as the Passing Unit (Platoon-Company)
07-2-9007	Conduct a Passage of Lines as the Stationary Unit (Platoon-Company)
19-3-2406	Conduct Roadblock and Checkpoint Operations
07-2-5027	Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Platoon-Company)
07-2-9014	Occupy an Assembly Area (Platoon-Company)
07-2-5009	Conduct a Rehearsal (Platoon-Company)
07-2-1405	Establish an Outpost (Platoon-Company)
44-3-3220	Perform Passive Air Defense Measures
44-3-3221	Perform Active Air Defense Measures
07-2-1189	Conduct a Dismounted Tactical Road March (Platoon-Company)
07-3-9016	Establish an Observation Post
07-2-6063	Maintain Operations Security (Platoon-Company)
07-2-1198	Conduct a Mounted Tactical Road March(Platoon-Company)

**Table A-1. Infantry platoon unit task list (continued)**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
07-2-1369	Cross a Water Obstacle (Platoon-Company)
07-2-1342	Conduct Tactical Movement (Platoon-Company)
07-2-1450	Secure Routes (Platoon-Company)
17-2-3070	Breach an Obstacle (Platoon-Company)
07-2-5036	Conduct Coordination (Platoon-Company)
07-2-6045	Employ Camouflage, Concealment, and Deception Techniques (Platoon-Company)
07-2-9005	Conduct a Linkup (Platoon-Company)
07-3-9013	Conduct Action on Contact
07-2-9011	Conduct Tactical Movement in an Urban Area (Platoon-Company)
07-2-9051	Conduct a Cordon and Search (Platoon-Company)
07-2-1495	Conduct an Air Assault (Platoon-Company)
07-3-1072	Conduct a Disengagement
07-3-1333	Knock Out a Bunker
07-3-9017	Conduct Actions at Danger Areas
17-2-4000	Conduct Route Reconnaissance (Platoon-Company)
19-3-2007	Conduct Convoy Security
03-2-9226	Cross a Chemically Contaminated Area
<b>Intelligence</b>	
34-2-0010	Report Tactical Information
34-3-0001	Monitor Platoon Operational Status
34-3-0003	Maintain Operations Security
<b>Fires</b>	
07-2-3036	Integrate Indirect Fire Support (Platoon-Company)
<b>Sustainment</b>	
63-2-4546	Conduct Logistics Package (LOGPAC) Support
08-2-0003	Treat Casualties
08-2-0004	Evacuate Casualties

**Table A-1. Infantry platoon unit task list (continued)**

<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>
<b><i>Protection</i></b>	
03-2-9224	Conduct Operational Decontamination
07-2-4054	Secure Civilians During Operations (Platoon-Company)
03-2-9201	Implement CBRNE Protective Measures
07-2-5063	Conduct Composite Risk Management (Platoon-Company)

Appendix B

## Company METL

Table B-1 is an example of the Infantry company's METL. For more information regarding METL, please refer to DTMS and or ATN.

**Table B-1. Example of Infantry company METL**

<b>INF CO</b>	<b>MET (ART)</b>
	<b>TG (T&amp;EO)</b>
	<i>Supporting Collective Task (T&amp;EO)</i>
<b>ART 7.1.2</b>	<b>Conduct an Attack</b>
<b>07-2-1090</b>	<b>TG: Conduct a Movement to Contact (Platoon-Company)</b>
07-2-1256	Conduct an Attack by Fire (Platoon-Company)
07-2-3000	Conduct Support by Fire (Platoon-Company)
07-2-9002	Conduct Bypass (Platoon-Company)
07-2-1234	Conduct an Airborne Assault (Platoon-Company) (IBCT Only)
07-2-1495	Conduct an Air Assault (Platoon-Company) (I & S BCT Only)
17-2-3070	Breach an Obstacle (Platoon-Company)
07-2-9002	Conduct a Bypass (Platoon-Company) (IBCT Only)
07-2-3036	Integrate Indirect Fire Support
07-2-5027	Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Platoon-Company)
07-2-9006	Conduct Passage of Lines as Passing Unit (Platoon-Company)
03-2-9224	Conduct Operational Decontamination
08-2-0003	Treat Casualties
08-2-0004	Evacuate Casualties
<b>07-2-9001</b>	<b>TG: Conduct an Attack (Platoon-Company)</b>

**Table B-1. Example of Infantry company METL (continued)**

INF CO	<b>MET (ART)</b>
	<b>TG (T&amp;EO)</b>
	<i>Supporting Collective Task (T&amp;EO)</i>
07-2-1256	Conduct an Attack by Fire (Platoon-Company)
07-2-1261	Conduct an Attack in an Urban Area (Platoon-Company)
07-2-9008	Conduct a Raid (Platoon-Company)
07-2-3000	Conduct Support by Fire (Platoon-Company)
07-2-1234	Conduct an Airborne Assault (Platoon-Company) (IBCT Only)
07-2-1495	Conduct an Air Assault (Platoon-Company) (I & S BCT Only)
07-2-9002	Conduct Bypass (Platoon-Company)
17-2-3070	Breach an Obstacle (Platoon-Company)
07-2-3036	Integrate Indirect Fire Support
07-2-5027	Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Platoon-Company)
07-2-9006	Conduct Passage of Lines as Passing Unit (Platoon-Company)
03-2-9224	Conduct Operational Decontamination
08-2-0003	Treat Casualties
08-2-0004	Evacuate Casualties
<b>ART 7.2</b>	<b>Conduct Defensive Operations</b>
<b>07-2-9003</b>	<b>TG: Conduct a Defense (Platoon-Company)</b>
07-2-9004	Conduct a Delay (Platoon-Company)
07-2-9009	Conduct a Withdrawal (Platoon-Company)
07-2-9012	Conduct a Relief in Place (Platoon-Company)
07-2-3036	Integrate Indirect Fire Support
07-2-5027	Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Platoon-Company)
07-2-9007	Conduct Passage of Lines as Stationary Unit (Platoon-Company)
63-2-4546	Conduct Logistics Package (LOGPAC) Support

Table B-1. Example of Infantry company METL (continued)

INF CO	MET (ART)
	TG (T&EO)
	<i>Supporting Collective Task (T&amp;EO)</i>
03-2-9224	Conduct Operational Decontamination
08-2-0003	Treat Casualties
08-2-0004	Evacuate Casualties
<b>ART 6.7.3</b>	<b>Conduct Security Operations</b>
<b>17-2-9225</b>	<b>TG: Conduct a Screen (Battalion-Brigade)</b>
07-2-9009	Conduct a Withdrawal (Platoon-Company)
17-2-4011	Conduct Area Reconnaissance (Platoon-Company)
07-2-3036	Integrate Indirect Fire Support
08-2-0003	Treat Casualties
08-2-0004	Evacuate Casualties
<b>17-2-4010</b>	<b>TG: Conduct Zone Reconnaissance (Platoon-Company)</b>
17-2-4000	Conduct Route Reconnaissance (Platoon-Company) (H & S BCT Only)
07-2-3036	Integrate Indirect Fire Support
07-2-9006	Conduct Passage of Lines as Passing Unit (Platoon-Company)
08-2-0003	Treat Casualties
08-2-0004	Evacuate Casualties
<b>07-2-1324</b>	<b>TG: Conduct Area Security (Platoon-Company)</b>
17-2-3070	Breach an Obstacle (Platoon-Company)
07-2-9012	Conduct a Relief in Place (Platoon-Company)
17-2-4000	Conduct Route Reconnaissance (Platoon-Company) (H & S BCT Only)
17-2-4010	Conduct Zone Reconnaissance (Platoon-Company)
07-2-1324	Conduct Area Security (Platoon-Company)
19-3-2406	Conduct Roadblock and Checkpoint Operations
07-2-4054	Secure Civilians during Operations(Platoon-Company)
07-2-3036	Integrate Indirect Fire Support

Table B-1. Example of Infantry company METL (continued)

INF CO	MET (ART)
	TG (T&EO)
	<i>Supporting Collective Task (T&amp;EO)</i>
07-2-5027	Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization (Platoon-Company)
63-2-4546	Conduct Logistics Package (LOGPAC) Support
03-2-9224	Conduct Operational Decontamination
08-2-0003	Treat Casualties
08-2-0004	Evacuate Casualties
<b>ART 7.3</b>	<b>Conduct Stability Operations</b>
<b>63-2-4546</b>	<b>TG: Conduct Logistics Package (LOGPAC) Support</b>
17-2-4000	Conduct Route Reconnaissance (Platoon-Company) (H & S BCT Only)
17-2-4010	Conduct Zone Reconnaissance (Platoon-Company)
07-2-1324	Conduct Area Security (Platoon-Company)
19-3-2406	Conduct Roadblock and Checkpoint Operations
07-2-4054	Secure Civilians during Operations(Platoon-Company)
08-2-0003	Treat Casualties
08-2-0004	Evacuate Casualties

## Appendix C

### **CATS Task Selection to METL Matrix**

A CATS task selection to the company's METL matrix is an example containing the existing CATS task selections specific to the Infantry platoon. Table C-1 contains an example of an Infantry platoon specific CATS task selections that support the METs and task groups of an Infantry company within one of the BCTs.

The contents of these example table was assembled from existing CATS relating to the Infantry platoon and are not complete. For more information regarding task selections relating to the Infantry platoon, go to CATS found at ATN and DTMS.

**Table C-1. Example Infantry platoon CATS task selection to company METL matrix**

<i>Infantry Platoon</i>		<i>METs and Task Groups</i>						
		<b>Attack</b>		<b>Defend</b>	<b>Security</b>			<b>Stability</b>
<b>Task Number</b>	<b>Task Title</b>	<b>Movement to Contact</b>	<b>Deliberate Attack</b>	<b>Area Defense</b>	<b>Screen</b>	<b>Recon</b>	<b>Area Security</b>	<b>Public Order &amp; Safety</b>
07-TS-3472	Plan and Prepare for Operations (PLT) (I/S BCT Only)	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
07-TS-4871	Plan and Prepare for Operations (SQD) (HBCT Only)	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
07-TS-3473	Attack (PLT) (I/S BCT Only)	X	X					
71-TS-3875	Attack (IN PLT) (HBCT Only)	X	X					
07-TS-4473	Attack (SQD) (I/S BCT Only)	X	X					
71-TS-4875	Attack (SQD) (HBCT Only)	X	X					
07-TS-3474	Defend (PLT) (I/S BCT Only)			X				
71-TS-3876	Defend (IN PLT) (HBCT Only)			X				

**Table C-1. Example Infantry platoon CATS task selection to company METL matrix (continued)**

Infantry Platoon		METs and Task Groups						
		Attack	Defend		Security			Stability
Task Number	Task Title	Movement to Contact	Deliberate Attack	Area Defense	Screen	Recon	Area Security	Public Order & Safety
07-TS-4474	Defend (SQD) (I/S BCT Only)			X				
07-TS-4876	Defend (SQD) (HBCT Only)			X				
07-TS-3471	Conduct Platoon Operations (I/S BCT Only)	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
71-TS-3873	Move Tactically (IN PLT) (HBCT Only)	X	X			X	X	
07-TS-3475	Move Tactically (PLT) (I/S BCT Only)	X	X			X	X	
07-TS-4475	Move Tactically (SQD) (I/S BCT Only)	X	X			X	X	
71-TS-4873	Move Tactically (SQD) (HBCT Only)	X	X			X	X	

**Table C-1. Example Infantry platoon CATS task selection to company METL matrix (continued)**

Infantry Platoon		METs and Task Groups						
		Attack	Defend		Security			Stability
Task Number	Task Title	Movement to Contact	Deliberate Attack	Area Defense	Screen	Recon	Area Security	Public Order & Safety
07-TS-3476	Protect the Force (PLT)	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
71-TS-3872	Protect the Force (IN PLT) (HBCT Only)	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
07-TS-3876	Escort Convoys (PLT) (SBCT)						X	
71-TS-3877	Escort Convoys (IN PLT) (HBCT)						X	
07-TS-4471	Conduct Squad Operations	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
71-TS-4870	Conduct Squad Operations (HBCT)	X	X	X	X	X	X	X

# Glossary

## Acronym

ISG

## Definition

first sergeant

## A

AA

avenue of approach

AAR

after action report

AKO

Army Knowledge Online

AO

area of operation

ARFORGEN

Army forces generation

ATLDG

Army training and leader development guidance

ATN

Army Training Network

ATS

Army training strategy

## B

BCIS

Battlefield Combat Identification System

BCT

brigade combat team

BCTC

battle command training center

BDA

battle damage assessment

BFSB

battlefield surveillance brigade

BHL

battle handover line

BN

battalion

BP

battle position

BRIDGEREP

bridge report

## C

CAS

close air support

CASEVAC

casualty evacuation

CATS

combined arms training strategy

CB

chemical and biological

CBRN

chemical, biological, radiological, nuclear

CCIR

commanders critical information requirement

CCTT

close combat tactical trainer

CEF

contingency expeditionary force

COA

course of action

COMMO

communication

COMSEC

communications security

COP

common operational picture

CP

command post

CTC

combat training center

## Glossary

---

### Acronym

### Definition

#### D

DE	directed energy
DEF	deployment expeditionary force
DOTD	Directorate of Training and Doctrine
DTMS	Digital Training Management System

#### E

EA	engagement area
EOCA	enemy courses of action
EOD	explosive ordnance disposal
EOF	escalation of force
EPLRS	Enhanced Position Location Reporting System
EPW	enemy prisoners of war

#### F

FBCB2	Force XXI Battle Command Brigade and Below
FIST	fire support team
FM	field manual
FMC	fully mission capable
FO	forward observer
FPF	final protective fires
FPL	final protective lines
FRAGO	fragmentary order
FSC	forward support company
FSO	fire support officer
FTX	field training exercise

#### G

GSR	ground surveillance radar
-----	---------------------------

#### H

HBCT	heavy brigade combat team
HPT	high payoff target
HQ	headquarters
HQDA	Headquarters, Department of the Army
HUMINT	human intelligence

#### I

IBCT	Infantry brigade combat team
IMINT	imagery intelligence
IP	internet protocol
IPB	intelligence preparation of the battlefield

<b>Acronym</b>	<b>Definition</b>
ISR	intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance
<b>J</b>	
JCATS	Joint Conflict and Tactical Simulation System
<b>K</b>	
KIA	killed in action
<b>L</b>	
LD	line of departure
LDS	leader development strategy
LOA	limit of advance
LOGPAC	logistics package
LRP	logistics release point
LVCG	live, virtual, constructive, and gaming
<b>M</b>	
MCoE	Maneuver Center of Excellence
MEDEVAC	medical evacuation
MET	mission essential task
METL	mission-essential task list
METT-TC	mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available and civil considerations
MILES	Multiple Integrated Laser Engagement System
MOPP 4	mission-oriented protective posture 4
MP	military police
MTF	medical treatment facility
MTOE	modified table of organization and equipment
MTP	mission training plan
MWD	military working dog
<b>N</b>	
NBC	nuclear, biological, and chemical
NCO	noncommissioned officer
<b>O</b>	
OAKOC	observation, avenues of approach, key and decisive terrain, obstacles, and cover and concealment
OBSTINTEL	obstacle intelligence
OE	operational environment

## Glossary

---

### Acronym

### Definition

OP observation post  
OPORD operations order

### P

PERSTAT personnel status  
PDDE power-driven decontamination equipment  
PIO police intelligence operations  
PIR priority intelligence requirements  
PME professional military education  
PMESII-PT political, military, economic, social, information, infrastructure, physical environment and time  
POSNAV position navigation

### R

RA regular Army  
R&S reconnaissance and surveillance  
RC reserve component  
REDCON readiness condition  
REMBASS Remotely Monitored Battlefield Sensor System  
ROI rules of interaction  
ROE rules of engagement  
RP release point

### S

S-1 adjutant [Army]  
S-4 supply officer [Army]  
SBCT Stryker brigade combat team  
SCPE simplified collective protective equipment  
SIGINT signal intelligence  
SIR specific information requirements  
SOEO scheme of engineer operations  
SOFA status of forces agreement  
SIR specific information requirements  
SITREP situation report  
SOI signal operating instructions  
SOP standing operating procedure  
SP start point  
SSI signal supplemental instructions  
STT sergeants time training  
STX situation training exercise  
SU situational understanding

<b>Acronym</b>	<b>Definition</b>
<b>T</b>	
TADSS	training aids, devices, simulators, and simulations
T&EOS	training and evaluation outlines
TC	training circular
TDA	table of distribution and allowance
TLP	troop leading procedure
TOE	table of organization and equipment
TRADOC	Training and Doctrine Command
TRP	target reference point
TSOP	tactical standing operating procedure
<b>U</b>	
UAS	Unmanned Aircraft System
UGS	unattended ground sensors
UTL	unit task list
UTM	unit training management
<b>V</b>	
VBS2	Virtual Battlespace 2
<b>W</b>	
WARNO	warning order
WFF	warfighting functions
WIA	wounded in action
WTPS	warfighter training support package
<b>X</b>	
XO	executive officer

**This page intentionally left blank.**

# References

## SOURCES USED

These are the sources quoted or paraphrased in this publication:

### ARMY PUBLICATIONS

- ADP 3-0, *Unified Land Operations*, 10 October 2011.
- AR 190-8, *Enemy Prisoners of War, Retained Personnel, Civilian Internees and Other Detainees*, 1 October 1997.
- AR 350-1, *Army Training and Leader Development*, 18 December 2009.
- AR 385-10, *The Army Safety Program*, 23 August 2007.
- AR 600-8-1, *Army Casualty Program*, 30 April 2007.
- ATLDG, Army, G-3/5/7 Memorandum, *Army Training and Leader Development Guidance, FY 10-11*, 31 July 2009.  
<https://atn.army.mil/Media/docs/CSA%20ATLD%20GUIDANCE%202009.pdf>
- ATTP 3-06.11, *Combined Arms Operations in Urban Terrain*, 10 June 2011.
- FM 3-11, *Multiservice Doctrine for Chemical, Biological, Radiological, and Nuclear Operations*, 1 July 2011.
- FM 3-11.4, *Multiservice Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical (NBC) Protection*, 2 June 2003.
- FM 3-11.5, *Multiservice Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Chemical, Biological, Radiological, and Nuclear Decontamination*, 4 April 2006.
- ATTP 3-18.12, *Air Assault Operations*, 1 March 2011.
- ATTP 3-20.97, *Dismounted Reconnaissance Troop*, 16 November 2010.
- ATTP 3-21.9, *SBCT Infantry Rifle Platoon and Squad*, 8 December 2010.
- FM 1-02, *Operational Terms and Graphics*, 21 September 2004.
- FM 2-01.3, *Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield/Battlespace*, 15 October 2009.
- FM 3-07, *Stability Operations*, 6 October 2008.
- FM 3-19.4, *Military Police Leader's Handbook*, 4 March 2002.
- FM 3-20.15, *Tank Platoon*, 22 February 2007.
- FM 3-20.96, *Reconnaissance and Cavalry Squadron*, 12 March 2010.
- FM 3-20.98, *Reconnaissance and Scout Platoon*, 3 August 2009.
- FM 3-20.971, *Reconnaissance and Cavalry Troop*, 4 August 2009.
- FM 3-21.8, *The Infantry Rifle Platoon and Squad*, 28 March 2007.

## References

---

- FM 3-21.10, *The Infantry Rifle Company*, 27 July 2006.
- FM 3-28, *Civil Support Operations*, 20 August 2010.
- FM 3-34, *Engineer Operations*, 4 August 2011.
- FM 3-39, *Military Police Operations*, 16 February 2010.
- FM 3-90.1, *Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team*, 9 December 2002.
- ADP 4-0, *Sustainment*, 31 July 2012.
- FM 4-02, *Force Health Protection in a Global Environment*, 13 February 2003.
- FM 4-02.7, *Multiservice Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Health Service Support in a Chemical, Biological, Radiological, and Nuclear Environment*, 15 July 2009.
- FM 4-25.11, *First Aid*, 23 December 2002.
- ADP 5-0, *The Operations Process*, 17 May 2012.
- FM 5-19, *Composite Risk Management*, 21 August 2006.
- ADP 6-0, *Mission Command*, 17 May 2012.
- FM 6-22, *Army Leadership: Competent, Confident and Agile*, 12 October 2006.
- ADP 7-0, *Training Units and Developing Leaders*, 23 August 2012.
- ATP 4-11, *Army Motor Transport Operations*, 5 July 2013.
- TC 3-34.489, *The Soldier and the Environment*, 8 May 2001.
- The Army Leader Development Strategy for a 21st Century Army*, 25 November 2009.
- [http://www.cgsc.edu/alds/ArmyLdrDevStrategy\\_20091125.pdf](http://www.cgsc.edu/alds/ArmyLdrDevStrategy_20091125.pdf)

### **JOINT AND DEPARTMENT OF DEFENSE PUBLICATIONS**

- JP 1-02, *Department of Defense (DOD) Dictionary of Military and Associated Terms Army Publications*, 8 November 2010.

### **DOCUMENTS NEEDED**

These documents must be available to the intended user of this publication.

### **FORMS**

- DA Form 1156, *Casualty Feeder Card*.
- DA Form 2028, *Recommended Changes to Publications and Blank Forms*.
- DA Form 7566, *Composite Risk Management Worksheet*.
- DD Form 1380, *U.S. Field Medical Card*.

### **READINGS RECOMMENDED**

None

## WEB SITES

Most Army doctrinal publications and regulations are available online at: <http://www.apd.army.mil>.

Army Knowledge Online (AKO) <https://www.us.army.mil>

Army Training Network (ATN) <http://atn.army.mil/index.aspx>

Combined Arms Training Strategy (CATS)

[https://atn.army.mil/dsp\\_CATSviewer01.aspx](https://atn.army.mil/dsp_CATSviewer01.aspx)

Deputy Chief of Staff, G-3/5/7 Memorandum, *Army Training Strategy*, 12 November 2009.

<https://atn.army.mil/Media/docs/Army%20Training%20Strategy%20%20Appendix%20A%2017%20Dec%202009.pdf>

Digital Training Management System (DTMS) <https://dtms.army.mil>  
(individual password required)

MCoE Collective Training Branch Home Page

<https://www.us.army.mil/suite/grouppage/130823>

Most joint publications are available online at:

<http://www.dtic.mil/doctrine/doctrine/doctrine.htm>.

**This page intentionally left blank.**

# Index

- A**
  - Army Training Network (ATN), 1-8
  - Army training strategy
    - 10 goals, 1-2
    - purpose, 1-2
  - Army training system
    - 11 principles, 1-3
- B**
  - battle drills
    - react to an obstacle, 3-17
- C**
  - collective tasks, 1-19
  - combined arms training strategy (CATS), 1-20
    - functional, 1-21
    - locations, 1-22
    - types, 1-21
    - unit, 1-21
- D**
  - DA Form 2028, Recommended Changes to Publications and Blank Forms, v
  - decisive action, 1-14
    - defensive, 1-14
- Digital Training Management System (DTMS), 1-20
- F**
  - decisive action
    - stability
      - operations (or defense support of civil authorities), 1-14
  - decisive action
    - offensive, 1-14
- G**
  - Gaming enablers, 1-25
- I**
  - individual task, 2-6
  - Infantry
    - mission, 1-1
- L**
  - leader development strategy
    - principles, 1-6
    - purpose, 1-3
  - live, virtual, constructive, and gaming (LVCG), 1-23
- M**
  - mission-essential task list (METL), 1-15
- mission variables, 1-11
- O**
  - operational environment (OE), 1-10
- T**
  - tactical operations, 1-11
  - task selections, 1-22
  - tasks
    - individual, 1-18
  - tasks shared, 1-19
  - tasks unique, 1-19
  - threats, 1-13
    - catastrophic, 1-13
    - disruptive, 1-13
    - hybrid, 1-13
    - irregular, 1-13
    - traditional, 1-13
  - training events, 1-22
- U**
  - unit task list (UTL), 1-18, 1-20
- W**
  - warfighter training support package (WTSP), 1-18, 1-23

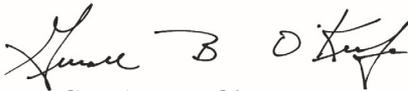
**This page intentionally left blank.**

**TC 3-21.8**  
**19 August 2013**

By Order of the Secretary of the Army:

**RAYMOND T. ODIERNO**  
*General, United States Army*  
*Chief of Staff*

Official:

A handwritten signature in black ink, appearing to read "Gerald B. O'Keefe". The signature is fluid and cursive, with the first name "Gerald" being the most prominent.

**GERALD B. O'KEEFE**  
*Administrative Assistant to the*  
*Secretary of the Army*  
1323107

**DISTRIBUTION:**

*Active Army, Army National Guard, and United States Army Reserve: To be distributed in accordance with the initial distribution number (IDN) 110782, requirements for TC 3-21.8.*

**This page intentionally left blank.**

**This page intentionally left blank.**

**This page intentionally left blank.**



